Owner's Manual

2026

CR-V

e: FCEV

California Proposition 65 Warning

⚠ **WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to *www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.*

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential. Some diagnostic and maintenance information is uploaded to Honda upon vehicle start up.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See *www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate*

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a NOTICE symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

System Updates Terms & Conditions

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your 9-in. Color Touchscreen to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your 9-in. Color Touchscreen and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your 9-in. Color Touchscreen searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your 9-in. Color Touchscreen. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

* Not available on all models

The terms of our privacy notice are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy notice. Our privacy notice sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application.
For further details, see Honda's vehicle data privacy notice at:
https://www.honda.com/privacy/connected-product-privacy-notice

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.
- as otherwise described in Honda's Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

Software End User License Agreement

Your vehicle comes equipped with software, which is governed by the End User License Agreement in Owner's Manual, and which contains a binding arbitration clause. Please refer to the End User License Agreement for the terms and conditions governing your use of the installed software, as well as the applications, services, functions, and content provided through the software. Your use of the installed software will serve as your consent to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement.

You may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at American Honda Motor Co., Inc., Honda Automobile Customer Service, Mail Stop CHI-5, 1919 Torrance Blvd., Torrance, CA 90501-2746.

Privacy Notice

This vehicle may share location and usage information. To manage this setting, visit *https://www.honda.com/privacy/connected-product-privacy-notice*.

To learn more about how we collect and use Personal Information including precise geolocation data, please read our Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice, accessible at *https://www.honda.com/privacy/connected-product-privacy-notice*.

Fuel Cell Monitoring System

This vehicle is equipped with a monitoring system that compiles data about your vehicle and driving conditions and transmits that data to Honda at regular intervals as determined at the discretion of Honda. This data includes information on but not limited to the following:

- Vehicle location, distance driven, warning indicators and messages, and vehicle speed
- Fuel cell system control and power generation

The system does not record audio or images.

Data collected is used for the sole purposes of technical diagnoses, preventive maintenance, research and vehicle development.

Neither Honda nor any third party receiving data will use the data for any other purpose without first obtaining customer authorization.

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

⚠WARNING You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

⚠CAUTION You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

The Navigation Manual is available online at *mygarage.honda.com*. **If you are the first registered owner of your vehicle, you may request a complimentary printed copy of the Navigation Manual within the first six months of vehicle purchase.** To request a copy, visit *mygarage.honda.com*.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, Audio/Information screen details, and Meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Safe Driving P. 47

For Safe Driving P. 48 Seat Belts P. 53 Airbags P. 64

Instrument Panel P. 105

Indicators P. 106 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 124

Controls P. 145

Clock P. 146 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 147
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 179
Climate Control System P. 232

Features P. 241

Audio System P. 242 9-in. Color Touchscreen P. 244

Driving P. 387

Before Driving P. 388 Towing a Trailer P. 394
Parking Your Vehicle P. 525 Multi-View Rear Camera P. 535

Maintenance P. 561

Before Performing Maintenance P. 562 Maintenance Minder™ P. 565
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 584
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 602

Handling the Unexpected P. 613

Tools P. 614 If a Tire Goes Flat P. 615
Overheating P. 637 If Hydrogen Gas is Leaking P. 638
If You Cannot Unlock the Hydrogen Fuel Lid P. 659
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 662

Information P. 665

Specifications P. 666 Identification Numbers P. 667
Warranty Coverages P. 670 Authorized Manuals P. 673

Contents

Child Safety P. 85
Safety Labels P. 102

Tailgate P. 164
Mirrors P. 197
Security System P. 173
Seats P. 199
Windows P. 176
Interior Convenience Items P. 210

Audio Error Messages P. 362
General Information on the Audio System P. 364

Off-Highway Driving Guidelines P. 395
Refueling P. 537
When Driving P. 397
Charging P. 540
Honda Sensing® P. 433
Fuel Economy P. 559
Braking P. 514

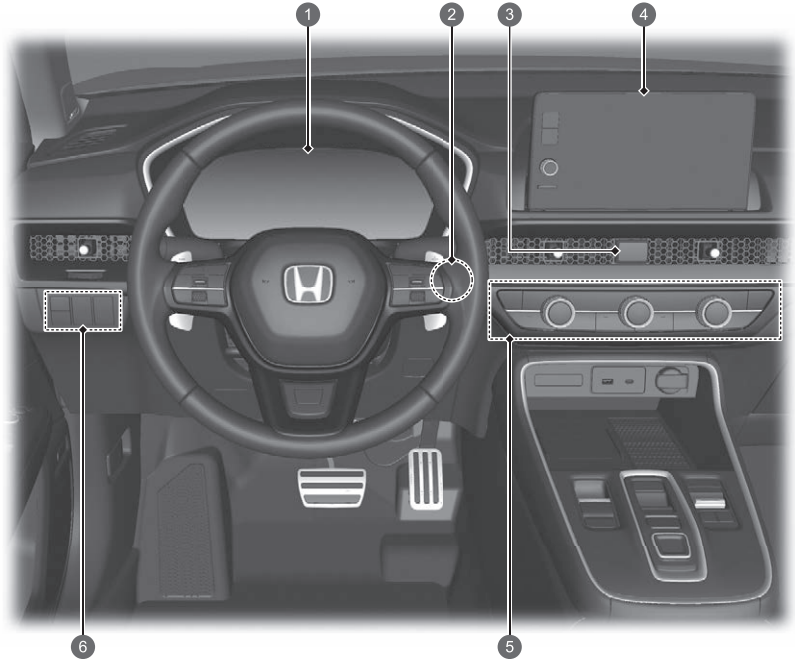
Maintenance Under the Hood P. 572
Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 588
Cleaning P. 603
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 580
12-Volt Battery P. 598
Accessories and Modifications P. 610
Remote Transmitter Care P. 600

Handling of the Jack P. 629
Indicator Coming On/Blinking P. 640
If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid P. 660
In Case of Emergency or Vehicle Trouble P. 663
Power System Won't Start P. 630
Fuses P. 648
If You Cannot Disengage the Charging/Power Supply Connector P. 661
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 635
Emergency Towing P. 657

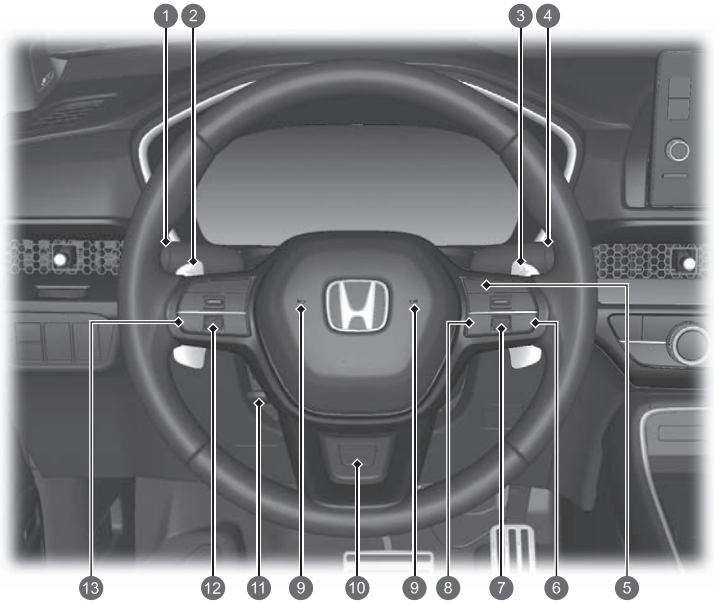
Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 668
Customer Service Information P. 674
Reporting Safety Defects P. 669
Open Source License P. 675

Quick Reference Guide P. 8
Safe Driving P. 47
Instrument Panel P. 105
Controls P. 145
Features P. 241
Driving P. 387
Maintenance P. 561
Handling the Unexpected P. 613
Information P. 665
Index P. 677

Visual Index

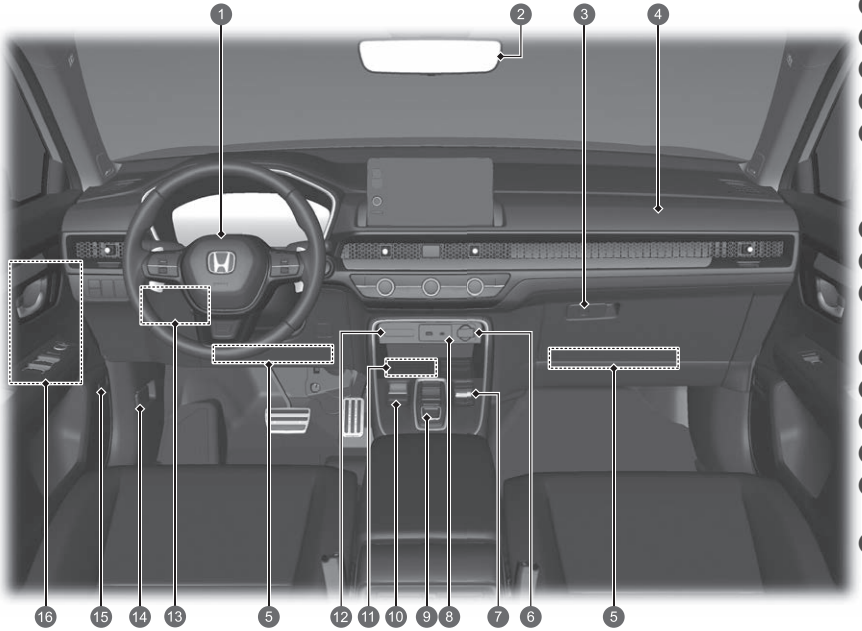


1. **System Indicators** P. 106
   Gauges P. 124
   Driver Information Interface P. 129, 132
2. **POWER Button** P. 179
3. **Hazard Warning Button**
4. **Audio System** P. 242
5. **Front Seat Heater Buttons** P. 225
   Climate Control System P. 232
   Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button P. 192
6. **(Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System OFF) Button** P. 420
   Power Tailgate Button P. 168

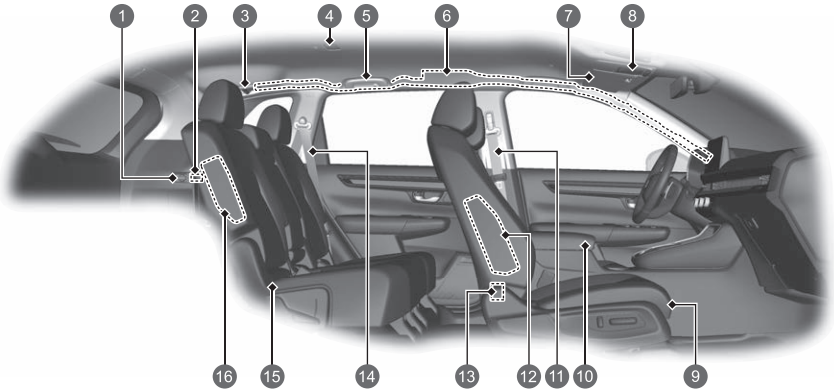


1. Headlights/Turn Signals P. 181, 182
2. (-) Paddle Selector (left side) P. 409
3. (+) Paddle Selector (right side) P. 409
4. Wipers/Washers P. 189
5. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons P. 465
6. Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button P. 488
7. Right Selector Wheel P. 132
8. Interval Button P. 477
9. Horn (Press the area around .)
10. Heated Steering Wheel P. 224
11. Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 196
12. Left Selector Wheel P. 248
13. *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® Buttons P. 343
    Audio Remote Controls P. 248

Visual Index

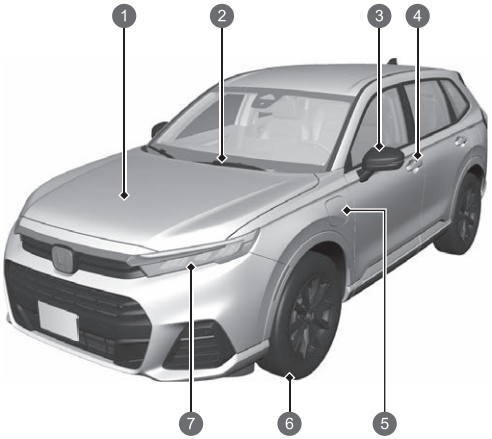


❶ Driver's Front Airbag P. 67
❷ Rearview Mirror P. 197
❸ Glove Box P. 212
❹ Passenger's Front Airbag P. 67
❺ Knee Airbags P. 72
❻ Accessory Power Socket P. 219
❼ Drive Mode Switch P. 414
(Hill Decent Control) Button P. 418
e Button P. 16
❽ USB Ports P. 247
❾ Shift Button P. 402
❿ Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 514
Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 519
⓫ Wireless Charger P. 220
⓬ Passenger Airbag Off Indicator P. 82
⓭ Interior Fuse Box P. 651
⓮ Hood Release Handle P. 573
⓯ Hydrogen Fuel Lid Release Button P. 538
⓰ Memory Buttons P. 194
SET Button P. 194
Power Window Switches P. 177
Master Door Lock Switch P. 161
Door Mirror Controls P. 198

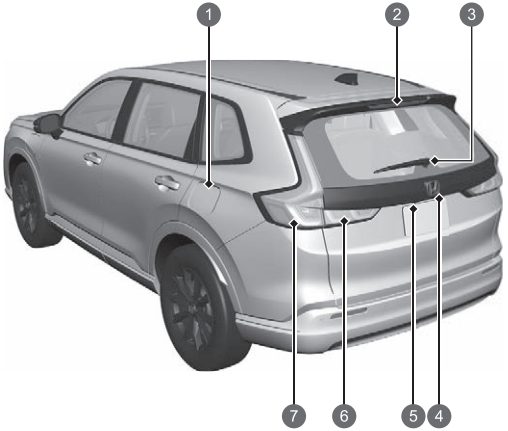


❶ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 219
❷ **Cargo Area Lights** P. 211
❸ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor** P. 60
❹ **Ceiling Light** P. 210
❺ **Coat Hook** P. 216
Grab Handle
❻ **Side Curtain Airbags** P. 79
❼ **Sun Visors** P. 226
Vanity Mirrors
❽ **Map Lights** P. 211
Sunglasses Holder P. 217
❾ **Front Seat** P. 199
❿ **Center Console Box** P. 213
⓫ **Seat Belts** P. 53
⓬ **Front Side Airbags** P. 76
⓭ **USB Ports** P. 247
⓮ **Seat Belt (Installing a Child Seat)** P. 94
Seat Belt to Secure a Child Seat P. 96
⓯ **Rear Seats** P. 203
LATCH to Secure a Child Seat P. 90
⓰ **Rear Side Airbags** P. 76

Visual Index



1. Maintenance Under the Hood P. 572
2. Windshield Wipers P. 189, 584
3. Power Door Mirrors P. 198
   Side Turn Signal Lights P. 181, 580
4. Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 150
5. How to Charge P. 544
   Power Supply Connector P. 227
6. Tires P. 588, 615
7. Headlights P. 182, 580
   Front Turn Signal/Parking/Daytime Running Lights P. 181, 580
   Front Side Marker Lights P. 580



1. How to Refuel P. 538
2. High-Mount Brake Light P. 583
3. Rear Wiper P. 191, 586
4. Opening/Closing the Tailgate P. 169
   Rear License Plate Light P. 583
   Tailgate Outer Handle P. 169
5. Multi-View Rear Camera P. 535
6. Back-Up Lights P. 583
   Taillights P. 583
7. Brake/Taillights P. 581
   Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 581
   Rear Side Marker Lights P. 581

Characteristics of Fuel Cell Vehicles

A fuel cell vehicle (FCV) converts hydrogen gas into electricity, which is used to power an electric motor. The FC (fuel cell) system is comprised of hydrogen tanks and an FC stack, as well as other components, and requires a constant supply of hydrogen fuel, and proper cooling and ventilation to generate electricity.

The FC stack is the main power unit, and is composed of a series of fuel cells joined together or "stacked" on one another. Within each fuel cell, an electric current is generated through a process that combines hydrogen and oxygen and is used to not only power the motor but also charge a High Voltage battery. This High Voltage battery provides supplementary power to assist the FC power system when the vehicle is subjected to heavy acceleration.

Unlike vehicles that use internal combustion engines, FC vehicles emit no harmful emissions such as CO_2 and NO_x, and are thus considered environmentally responsible. The only substance discharged from the tailpipe is water, in the form of both liquid and vapor.

FC Stack

Fuel cell power output may decline faster than usual under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle is frequently used in sub-zero temperatures over extended periods of time.
- The vehicle is repeatedly left in standby state for extended periods of time.
- The FC system is subjected to frequent starting and stopping.
- Salt water has permeated the air cleaner element.
  ▶ Replace the air cleaner element and clean the surrounding area. For details, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
- The vehicle is driven extensively in areas where the air contains high levels of:
  Dust
  Sulfur (common to hot spring and volcanoes)
  Organic solvents, e.g., paints and thinners
  Amine-related substances, e.g., ammonia
  Chlorinated substances, e.g., salt and snow-melting agents
  ▶ Once the vehicle is driven in a normal environment again, fuel cell power output will return over time.

In the following circumstances, power output may be temporarily limited:

- The power system temperature is high or low.
- The hydrogen level is low.
- The altitude is above 6,562 feet (2,000 meters).
- You are repeatedly accelerating and decelerating aggressively.
- You are ascending a slope.

Fuel Cell Power System

The fuel cell power system regulates the fuel cells to maintain efficient power generation in various driving conditions. The power system is unique to fuel cell vehicles and differs from those used in conventional internal combustion vehicles or electric vehicles in the following ways:

- Depending on circumstances, the system may need to adjust the condition of the fuel cells before shutting down; therefore, the power system may continue to operate even after the power mode is set to OFF.
- When parked: If the ambient temperature drops, the system may operate automatically to adjust the condition of the fuel cells.
- In cold temperatures, the power system may take more time to start or stop than usual as the fuel cells need to be conditioned before they can generate power.
- In high temperatures, if the vehicle is left idling for a long time then the fuel cell power output may be temporarily limited to protect the FC system.

Hydrogen Tanks

- **Outline**

The hydrogen tanks are the storage containers that house the compressed hydrogen gas.

- **Inspection**

Owners of fuel cell vehicles are required by law to have these tanks inspected periodically. Filling a hydrogen tank with compressed hydrogen gas is prohibited by law if the tank has not passed inspection or if the tank has expired.

The hydrogen tanks are affixed with an expiration date. This date is also affixed to the hydrogen tanks and the hydrogen fuel lid. If a tank has expired, replace it immediately.

- **Disposal**

Disposal of hydrogen tanks or hydrogen tank valves must be done in accordance with the pertinent rules and regulations of the state or region within which the tanks or valves are to be disposed of. For details, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

- **Theft**

If your fuel cell vehicle is stolen, be sure to inform the police that the vehicle is equipped with tanks filled with compressed hydrogen gas.

Refueling

Fuel cell vehicles need hydrogen to run. Refuel with compressed hydrogen gas at an authorized hydrogen filling station.

Sounds Unique to the Fuel Cell Vehicle

When you first start driving this vehicle, you likely will hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you first turn on the power system, while driving, and just after parking. Some of these sounds are unique to this vehicle's powertrain, fuel, and climate control systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognize them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

Certain sounds associated with your vehicle may be caused by:

- Pressurized intake air being released through the rear of the vehicle.
  - ▶ This can happen if the accelerator is released suddenly when the vehicle is under a heavy load, such as when climbing a hill.
- The power system warming up.
  - ▶ This sound is particularly loud when temperatures are extremely low (below –22°F [–30°C]).
- Hydrogen gas flowing through the fuel line during refueling.

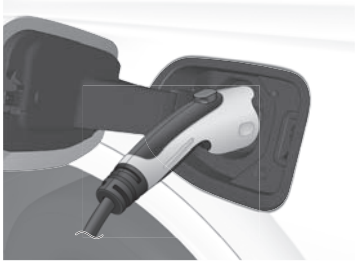
Charging

Charging the High Voltage Battery P. 542

There are a number of ways to charge the High Voltage battery. You can:

- Use an on-board charging cable.
- Use a standard household outlet.
- Use a public charging station.
- Enable hybrid charge and let the battery charge while the vehicle is being driven.
  - ▶ **CHARGE** mode will not completely charge the High Voltage battery to 100%.
- Turn on the power system, and keep it on for more than 30 minutes.

When charging from an external source, you can schedule the start and end time for charging. P. 553



Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When the vehicle is decelerating or descending a hill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

The regenerative force that the electric motor applies to the wheels when it is in regenerative mode helps slow the vehicle down in a manner similar to engine braking which is used on conventional vehicles. If you want to slow the vehicle down at a faster rate without using the brakes, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to increase the resistive force.

e Button

Depending on the selected mode, your vehicle will adjust the electric power output of both the FC system and the High Voltage battery.

AUTO Mode

When driving, your vehicle is propelled by both the FC system and the High Voltage battery.

EV Mode

While EV mode is activated, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the High Voltage battery.
When the power mode is set to ON, EV mode is automatically selected if possible.

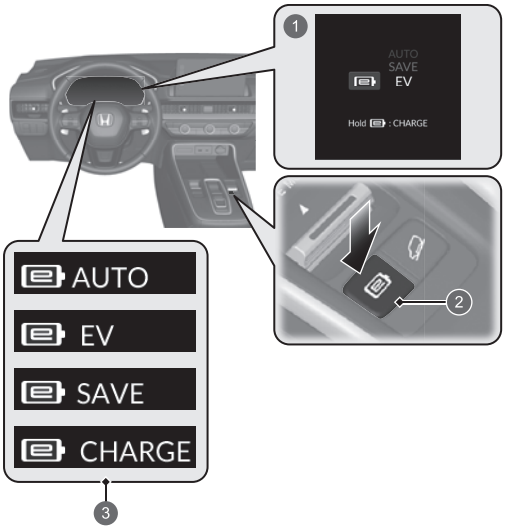
Your vehicle will have less ability to accelerate when driving at high speeds.

Shifts in vehicle or driving conditions may automatically cancel EV mode and/or prevent the system from manually switching into EV mode.
When this happens, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.
If you start driving in another mode, then EV mode cannot be selected until after the power mode is set to OFF.

CHARGE Mode

When **CHARGE** mode is activated, the FC system starts and the High Voltage battery begins charging.
When you press and hold the **e** button, **CHARGE** mode is enabled and the **CHARGE** mode indicator comes on. When you press and hold the **e** button again and select **AUTO** mode, the **AUTO** mode indicator comes on. By pressing the **e** button, you can select a mode to change to, and the indicator for the selected mode will come on.

Shifts in vehicle or driving conditions may automatically cancel **CHARGE** mode and/or keep the system from manually switching into **CHARGE** mode.
When this happens, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.
Even when in **CHARGE** mode, the battery charge may decrease in demanding situations such as driving up a hill.



1 Driver Information Interface
2 **e** Button
3 **AUTO**/**EV**/**SAVE**/**CHARGE** Mode Indicator

SAVE Mode

When **SAVE** mode is activated, the system prioritizes using the FC system and conserves the High Voltage battery's remaining charge.

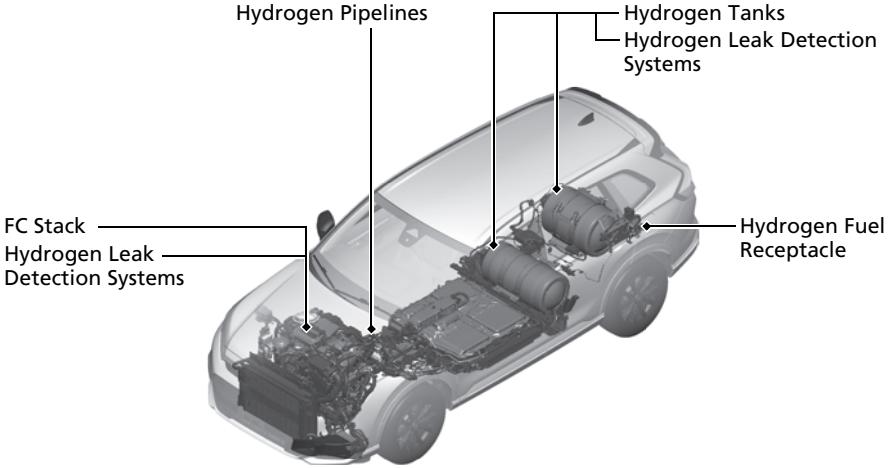
When you press the **e** button and select **SAVE** mode, **SAVE** mode is enabled and the **SAVE** mode indicator comes on. When you press the **e** button you can select a mode to change to, and the indicator for the selected mode comes on.

Shifts in vehicle conditions may automatically cancel **SAVE** mode and/or keep the system from manually switching into **SAVE** mode. When this happens, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.

Fuel Cell Vehicle Precautions

Hydrogen-related Components

Fuel cell vehicles have hydrogen-related components such as hydrogen tanks, an FC stack, and hydrogen pipelines.
Labels with handling warnings are attached to these components.



Hydrogen-retaining components
- Hydrogen tanks
- Hydrogen pipelines
- FC stack

Hydrogen Leak Detection System locations
- Upper part of the FC Stack
- Hydrogen Tanks

Components with a warning label
- Hydrogen tanks
- Hydrogen pipeline

⚠WARNING

Never leave the fuel cell vehicle in standby state in an enclosed area that has limited ventilation as there is a risk of oxygen deprivation.

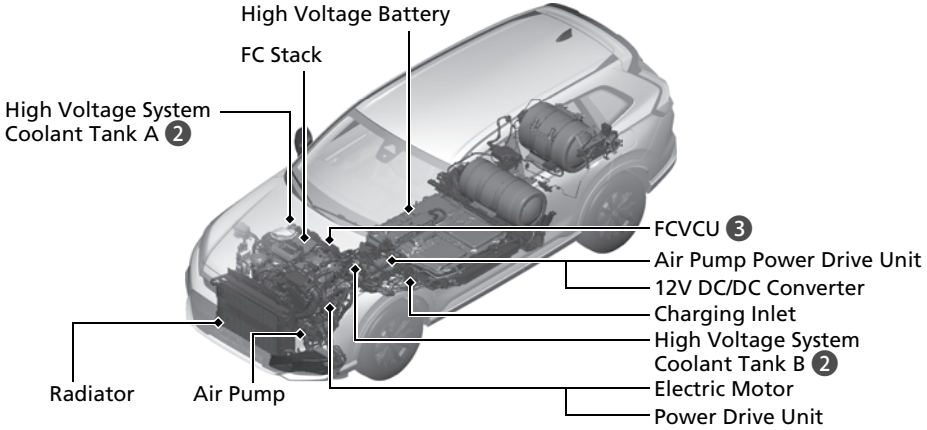
Fuel cells consume oxygen when generating electricity. If the vehicle is left in standby state in an enclosed area, the air may become deprived of oxygen, resulting in asphyxiation of any person(s) in the area. Make sure the area is well ventilated before turning the power system on. If the vehicle is in a garage, keep the door open.

⚠WARNING

Do not attempt to modify, install, or disassemble the hydrogen-related components.
The hydrogen-related components are filled with hydrogen gas. Removing or disassembling these components may cause a hydrogen gas leak which can lead to a fire or explosion.
If you notice anything unusual about your vehicle, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

High Voltage Components, High Voltage Cables and High Temperature Components

Fuel cell vehicles have high voltage components such as the FC stack, FCVCU, High Voltage battery, power drive unit, high voltage cables (identified by their orange covers), electric motor, and high temperature parts such as the radiator. Labels with handling warnings are attached to these components.



⚠WARNING

This vehicle has high voltage circuits and parts. Failure to observe the following precautions can result in burns or electric shock.

- Do not remove, disassemble, or replace the high voltage parts, cables (orange) or their connectors.

Only a qualified technician should handle any electrical equipment. For inspection and repair, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

1

2

3

1 Label
2 High Voltage System Coolant Tank Cap
3 FCVCU

Maintaining the High Voltage Battery and the FC system

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery level may get low. Keeping your vehicle's battery level low can shorten the battery life. Additionally, while it does not result in any damage, not using the FC system for an extended period of time may cause the **POWER SYSTEM** indicator to come on temporarily. To maintain the battery and the FC system while the vehicle is not in use, turn on the FC system at least once every three months, and keep it on for more than 30 minutes.

Temperature

When storing the vehicle, make sure not to expose it to extremely low temperatures: It may take a longer time to start in very cold conditions or may not start at all until temperatures rise. If the temperature of the fuel cell or the High Voltage battery drops below –22°F (–30°C), the power system will not start.

Energy Efficiency

As with a gasoline powered vehicle, the fuel efficiency and the range of this vehicle is most impacted by the driver's driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving or climate control system usage also has a strong impact with heavy usage negatively affecting the vehicle's range. In particular, when it is cold outside, climate control system consumes a lot of power, so the vehicle's driving range on electric power can be reduced. The capacity of the High Voltage battery will be less when the temperature is low.

Battery Type

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle, a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems, and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

Hydrogen Leak Detection System

When the power mode is turned to ON, the hydrogen leak detection system is activated. If a hydrogen gas leak is detected by the hydrogen detector, the hydrogen leak indicator will come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

Hydrogen Leak Indicator P. 114

Hydrogen Gas Leak

If a hydrogen gas leak is suspected, follow the recommended actions listed in the instructions of this manual.

If Hydrogen Gas is Leaking P. 638

Hydrogen Supply/High Voltage Shut-off System

If the FC system is on and the vehicle is involved in a crash, depending on the severity of the impact, the shut-off system will cut off the supply of hydrogen and electricity. In this case, it is not possible to restart the vehicle.

To restart the FC system, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

⚠WARNING

Since hydrogen gas is highly flammable, a hydrogen gas leak is extremely dangerous as the leaked gas, which is dispersed into the atmosphere, can ignite, resulting in a fire in which you or someone else can be serious injured or killed. Keep flammable materials and liquids away from the vehicle at all times, especially if a hydrogen gas leak is detected.

In the case of a hydrogen gas leak, a buzzer will sound and the hydrogen gas leak indicator will come on. If you are driving the vehicle, stop in a safe, well-ventilated place. Then turn the power mode to OFF and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer at once. You should also display signs warning of the danger and be aware of and keep away anything that could ignite the gas.

The system is designed so that in the event that the vehicle catches fire, the gas inside the tanks will be released through the tank valves, thereby ensuring that pressure (due to heat from the fire) within the tanks does not build up.

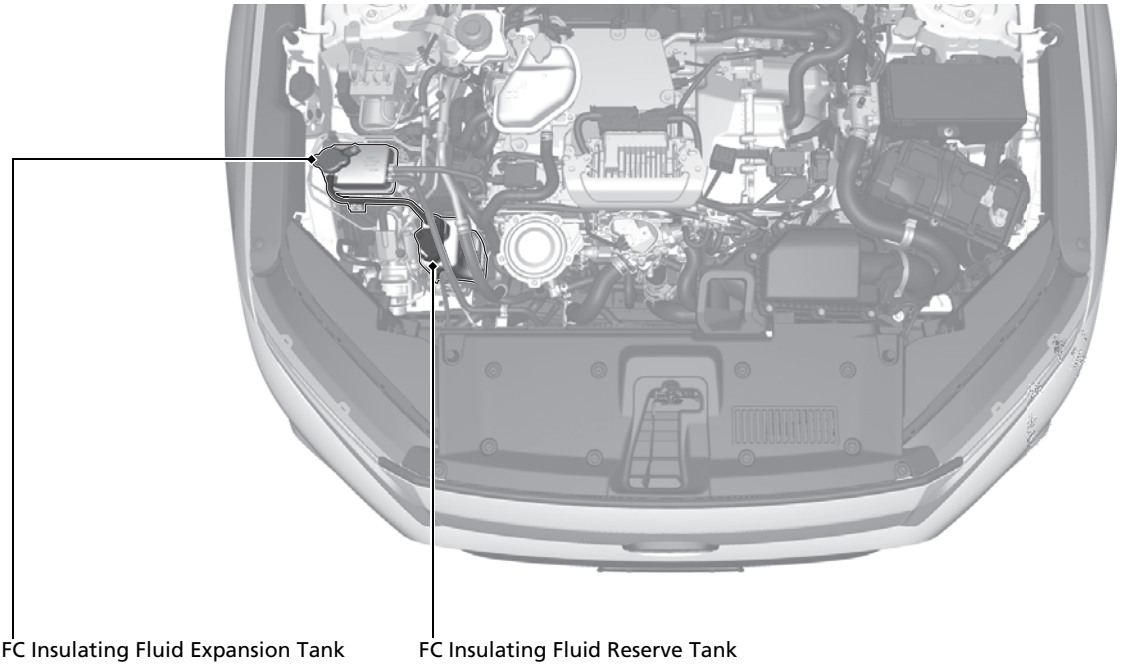
This gas is released toward the right rear of the vehicle in a downward direction. Do not attempt to extinguish the fire from behind the vehicle as the exiting gas may ignite into a flame.

Fuel Cell Insulating Fluid

Fuel cell insulating fluid (FC insulating fluid) uses a specifically designed fluid with high electrical insulation properties in order to safely cool the fuel cell.

Never add water, other commercial coolants, or genuine Honda inverter coolant to the cooling system. Doing so will cause damage to the fuel cell.

Consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer to replenish or change the fuel cell insulating fluid.



Ion Exchanger

An ion exchanger is installed in the fluid lines for the fuel cell in order to maintain the insulation properties of the fuel cell insulating fluid (FC insulating fluid).
If the message **Maintenance due soon A** appears on the driver information interface, ion exchange filter replacement is necessary. Be sure to consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Exhaust Pipe

Water is expelled from the tail pipe while the vehicle is running or while the High Voltage battery is being charged. This also happens after the vehicle has been running or when you shut down the FC system by setting the power mode to OFF. If you stand to the right rear of the vehicle, you may be sprayed by this waste water.
Never drink water expelled from the pipe. Though this water is harmless, it is not suitable for drinking.
While the vehicle is parked during cold temperatures, the FC system may automatically turn on and discharge water from the exhaust pipe. If this water is discharged as a vapor, it may appear as a white mist. This, however, is not indicative of a problem.
Do not obstruct or block the exhaust pipe as the FC system may stop working.

Maintenance, Repair, and Disposal

Always consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer regarding maintenance, repair, and disposal.
Fuel cells and High Voltage batteries that have been removed from disposed vehicles are collected through an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. Do not dispose of those batteries yourself.

⚠WARNING

Do not directly touch any water emissions from the exhaust pipe.
Water created during FC power generation is discharged from the exhaust pipe in the form of either liquid (water) or gas (steam). Directly touching this water may cause burns.

In Case of a Crash

- If a vehicle fire occurs, leaked hydrogen gas may ignite. Stay far away from the vehicle and call the local fire department.
  To extinguish a vehicle fire, use a large amount of water, dry chemical fire extinguisher (Class A, B, or C), or carbon dioxide fire extinguisher. With an inadequate amount of water, a fire cannot be put out completely. Never attempt to extinguish a vehicle fire with a small amount of water.
- If your vehicle needs to be towed, make sure it is done with all the wheels lifted using the flatbed equipment. If the front wheels are touching the ground, the rotating tires will force the electric motor to spin, which in turn, may damage the power system, transmission, etc.
- Do not set the power mode to ON if **Hydrogen leak detection problem.** message appears on the driver information interface, as the vehicle may not be able to detect leaking hydrogen fuel after a severe crash. Contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer at once.
- Be careful of electric shock hazard.
  ▶ If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.
- Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.
  ▶ The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that can leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid any skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, then seek medical attention immediately.
- Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.
  ▶ Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water can be dangerous.
- Any time the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

⚠WARNING

If the body of the vehicle is seriously damaged or deformed in a crash, hydrogen gas may leak out from the vehicle. Keep flammable sources, such as a lit cigarette or warning flares, away from the vehicle.

➔ **If Hydrogen Gas is Leaking** P. 638

Also, high voltage parts and/or the cables (orange) connecting them may be exposed as a result of a crash. Stay clear of these parts as you may be electrocuted.

If the vehicle catches fire, leaked hydrogen gas may ignite. Stay far away from the vehicle and report to the fire department that a vehicle containing hydrogen tanks is on fire.

The system is designed so that in the event that the vehicle catches fire, the gas inside the tanks will be released through the tank valves, thereby ensuring that pressure within the tanks does not build up. This gas is released toward the right rear of the vehicle in a downward direction. Do not attempt to extinguish the fire from behind the vehicle as the exiting gas may ignite into a flame.

⚠WARNING

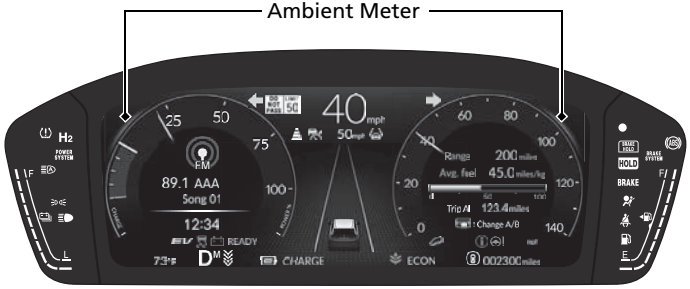
If a High Voltage battery fluid leaks, be careful not to touch the fluid. It can harm your eyes and skin. If it comes in contact with your eyes and skin: flush the affected area with clean water immediately for a few minutes, and seek immediate medical attention.

Do not use a warning flare near a fuel cell vehicle. If hydrogen gas is leaking, it may ignite the gas, and result in a vehicle fire.

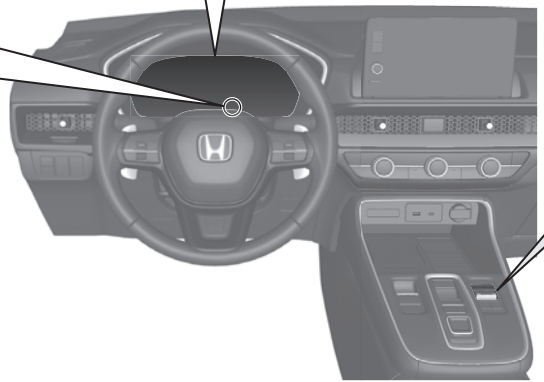
Eco Assist® System P. 414

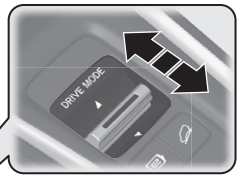
Ambient Meter

- With SPORT mode off, the color of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner.



ECON Mode Indicator P. 118
Comes on when the **ECON** mode is selected.





Drive Mode Switch P. 414
Select the **ECON** mode to help maximize fuel economy.

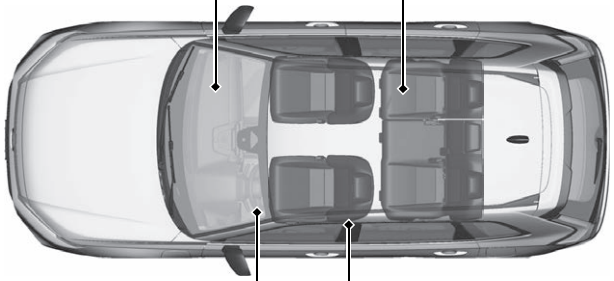
Safe Driving P. 47

Airbags P. 64

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety P. 85

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.



Seat Belts P. 53

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

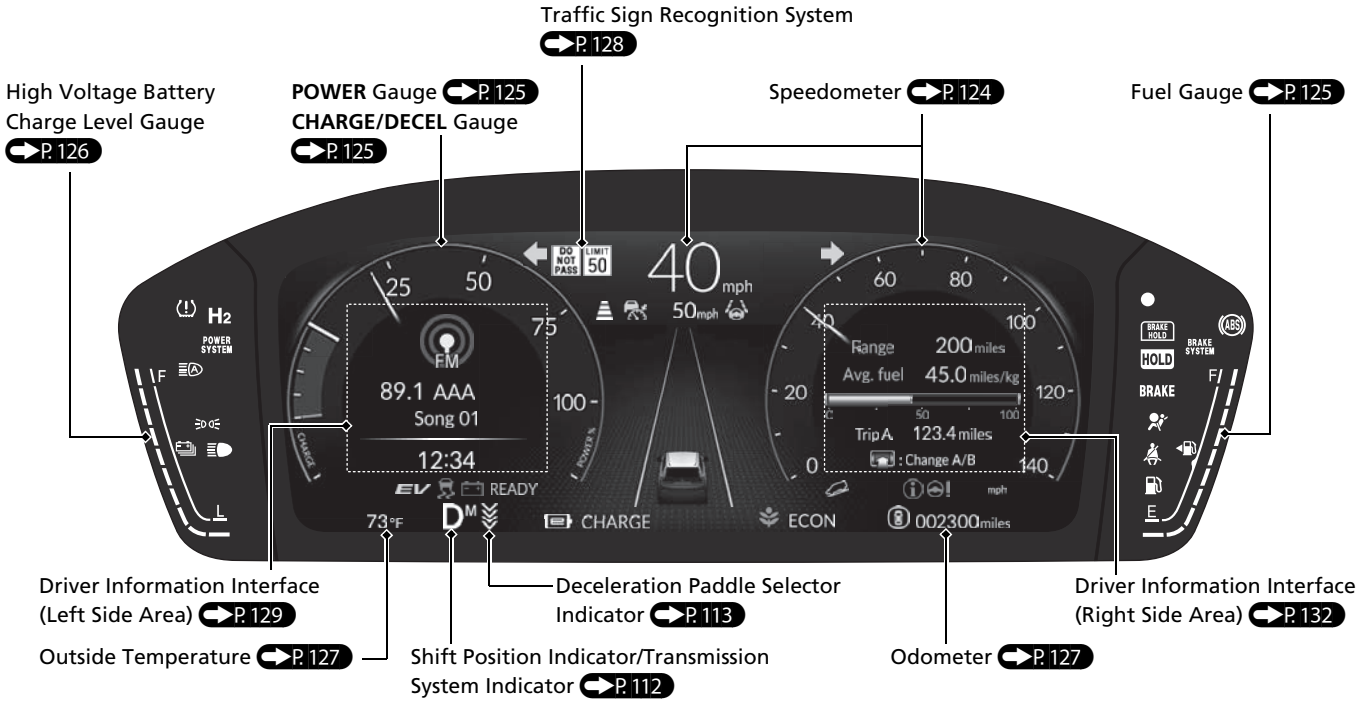
Before Driving Checklist P. 52

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Instrument Panel P. 105

Indicators P. 106/Gauges P. 124/Driver Information Interface P. 129, 132

- You can change the gauge design.
  Change gauge design P. 144



Controls P. 145

Clock P. 146

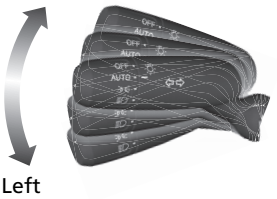
You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.
P. 261

POWER Button P. 179

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.

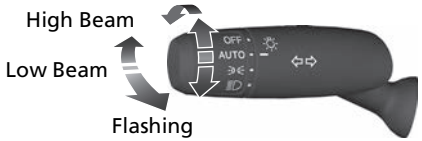
Turn Signals P. 181

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 182

Light Control Switches

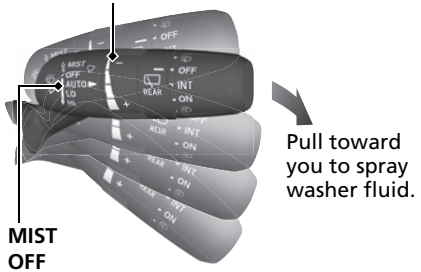


Wipers and Washers

P. 189

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring
−: Low sensitivity
+: High sensitivity



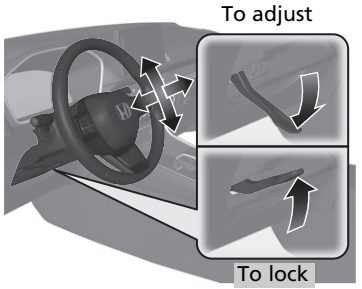
MIST
OFF
AUTO: Wiper speed varies automatically
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel P. 196

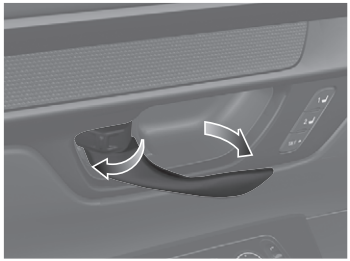
- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

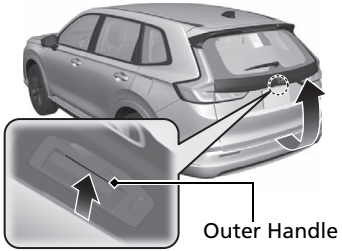
P. 160

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

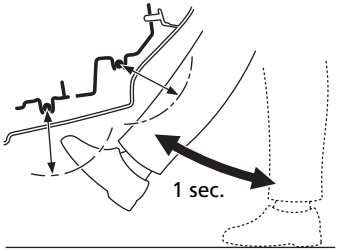


Tailgate P. 164

- Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you have the keyless remote on you.
- Press the power tailgate button on the driver's side control panel.
- Press the power tailgate button on the keyless remote.



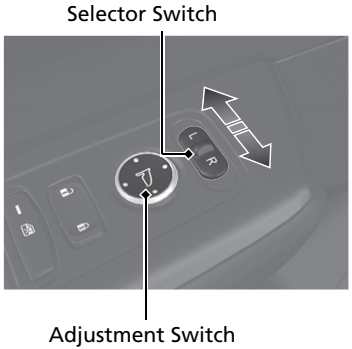
With the remote on you, raise and lower your foot (in a kicking motion) under the center of the rear bumper to open or close the tailgate.



Power Door Mirrors

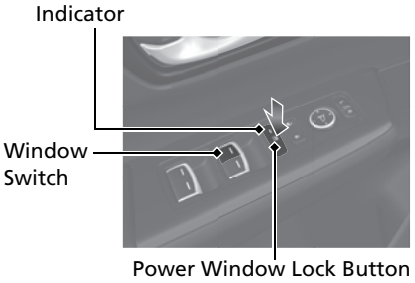
P. 198

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.



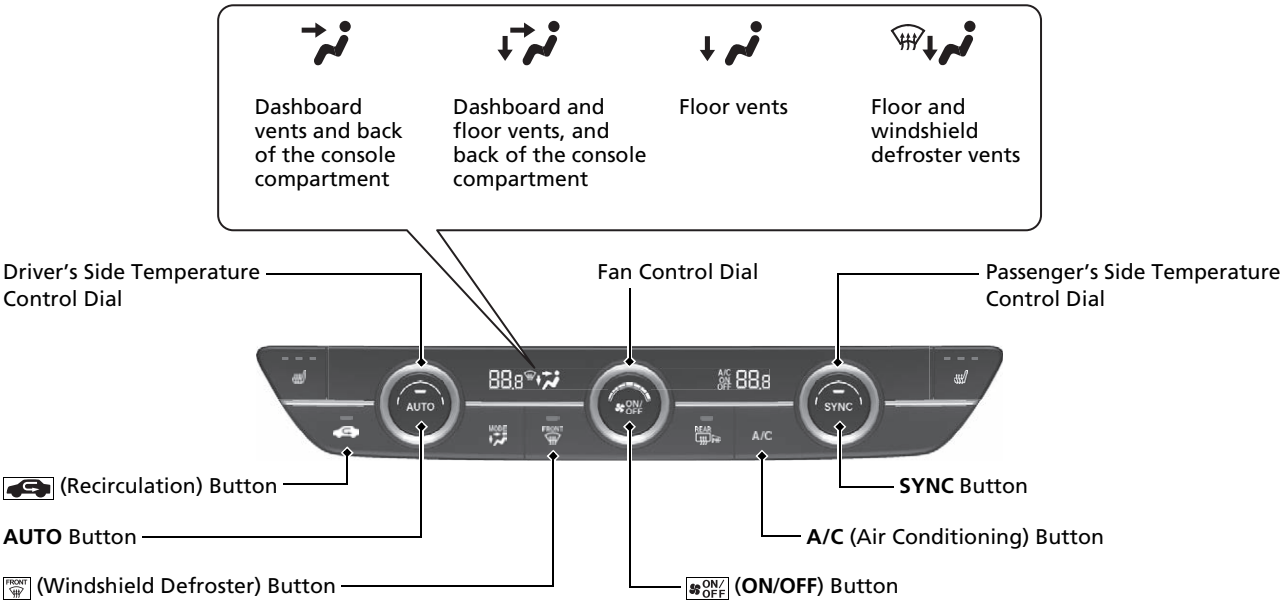
Power Windows P. 177

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the ON position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



Climate Control System P. 232

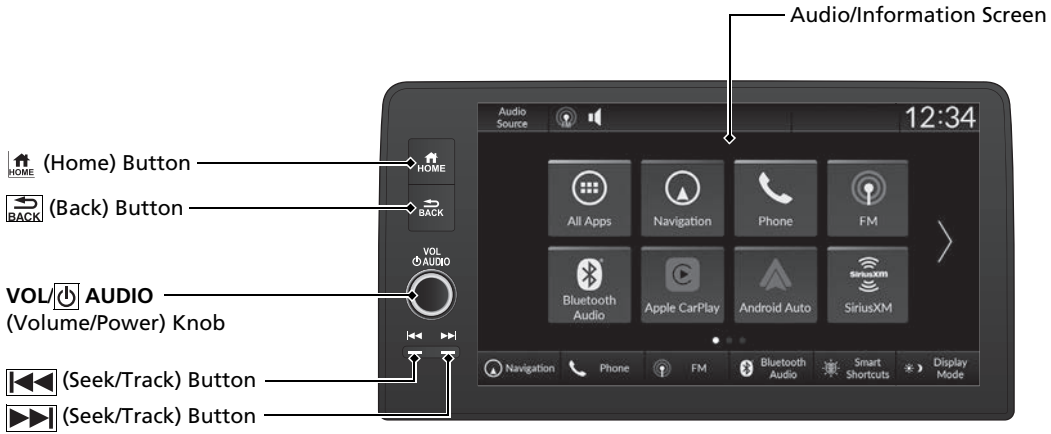
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windshield.



Features P. 241

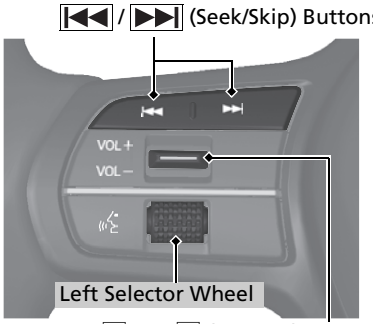
Audio System P. 242, 244

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



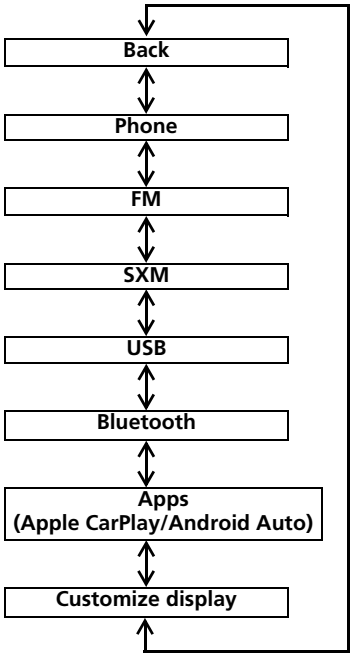
Audio Remote Controls

P. 248



- **VOL+ / VOL–** (Volume) Switch
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **|◀◀ / ▶▶|** (Seek/Skip) Buttons
  Radio:
  Press **|◀◀ / ▶▶|** to change the preset radio station. Press and hold **|◀◀ / ▶▶|** to change the strong station.
  A wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection:
  Press **|◀◀ / ▶▶|** to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  USB flash drive:
  Press and hold **|◀◀ / ▶▶|** to change a folder.

- Left Selector Wheel
  Roll up or down:
  To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

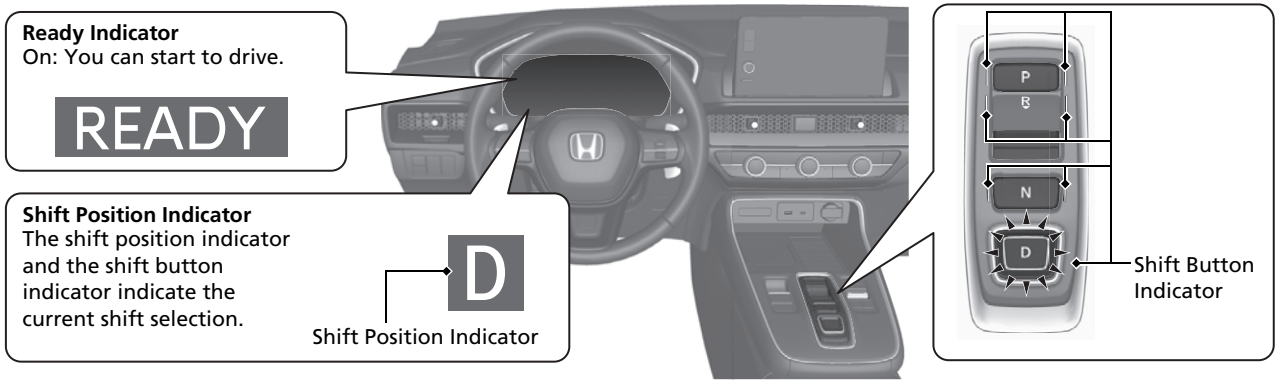


Driving P. 387

Transmission P. 401, 402

● Select P and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.

Shifting



P **Parking**
Press the P button.
Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

R **Reverse**
Press the R button.
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Press the N button.
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
- Used for normal driving.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when **SPORT** mode is ON.

Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 409

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

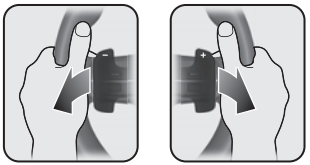
Pull the + selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

- **When SPORT mode is OFF**
  If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the instrument panel.
- **When SPORT mode is ON**
  If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the instrument panel.

When **SPORT** mode is OFF, the deceleration stage appears.

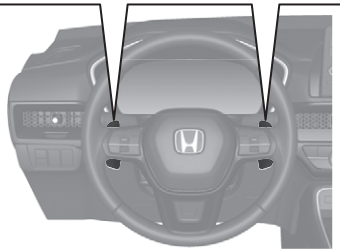
Deceleration stage

When **SPORT** mode is ON, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.



− Paddle Selector

+ Paddle Selector



CMBS™ On and Off

P. 441

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS™ can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS™ is turned on every time you turn the power system on.
- To turn the CMBS™ on or off, use the safety support of the driver information interface.

VSA® On and Off P. 420

- The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA® function, press and hold the (VSA® **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 422

- Detects a change in tire conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tire pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

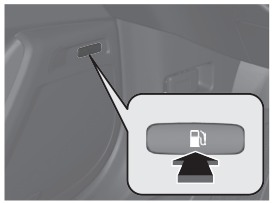
Refueling P. 537

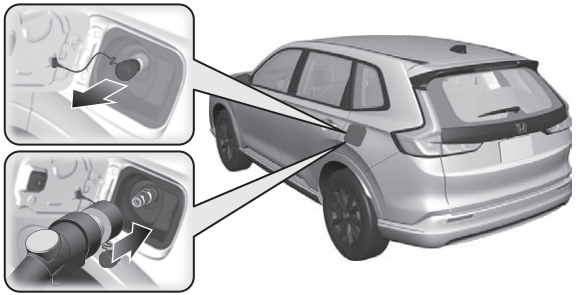
Fuel requirement: Compressed hydrogen gas
Hydrogen supply pressure: 70 MPa (10,153 psi) (at 59°F [15°C])
Hydrogen filling amount*1: Approximately 9.5 lbs (4.3 kg) (at 70 MPa)
Hydrogen tank capacity: 29.83 US gal (112.9 L) (at 70 MPa [10,153 psi])

*1: A measured value when refueled at a hydrogen station with 70 MPa (10,153 psi) of supply pressure compliant with the SAE (J2601) fueling protocol.

Hydrogen Filling Station: To completely fill the hydrogen tank, you need to use a hydrogen filling station that has an H70 dispenser, which is capable of supplying pressures of up to 10,153 psi (70 MPa).
Refueling the vehicle is only possible if the pressure inside the hydrogen tank of the vehicle does not exceed the supply pressure of the filling station.
If you use an H35 dispenser, you will be able to fill only half of the tank.

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Press the hydrogen fuel lid release button on the driver's door to open the fuel lid.
3. Remove the dust cap inside the hydrogen fuel lid.
4. Start refueling.





Honda Sensing® P. 433

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda Sensing® has the following functions:

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) P. 436

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Low Speed Braking Control P. 450

Using sonar sensors located on the front and rear bumpers and front grille, this system can detect if there is danger of a potential collision with a wall or other obstacle during normal driving or when the accelerator pedal is depressed with too much force. The system then assists in avoiding collisions and reducing damage from impact through assistive braking and/or assistive driving power suppression.

Road Departure Mitigation System P. 456

Alerts and helps assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 464

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 485

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Traffic Jam Assist P. 495

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a camera mounted to the upper portion of the windshield to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the center of the detected lane.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 504

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit your vehicle has just passed, showing it on the gauge.

Auto High-Beam P. 186

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

Blind Spot Information System P. 427

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Cross Traffic Monitor P. 531

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.
The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Parking Sensor System P. 526

The corner and center sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface, and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

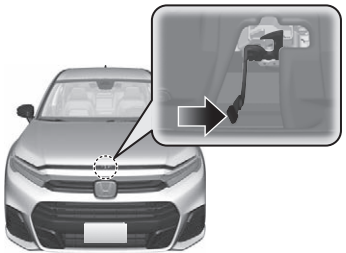
Maintenance P. 561

Under the Hood P. 572

- Check windshield washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the hood release handle under the driver's side lower corner of the dashboard.

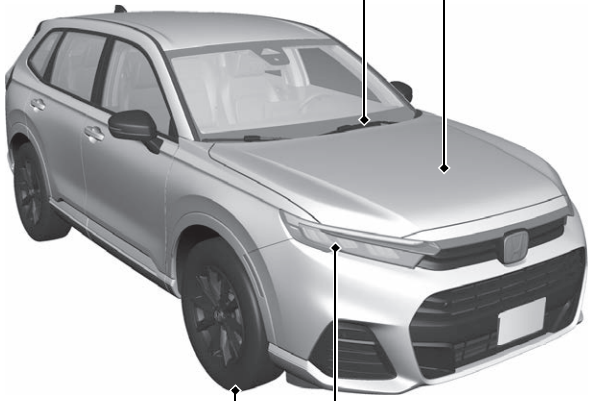
2. Locate the hood latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 584

- When lifting the front wiper arms, move them into the maintenance position before lifting them.
- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield or become noisy.



Tires P. 588

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

Lights P. 580

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected P. 613

Flat Tire P. 615

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tire using the tire repair kit in the cargo area.

Power System Won't Start P. 630

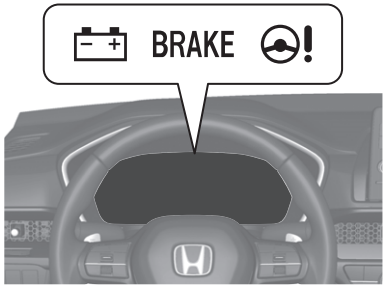
- If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.

Overheating P. 637

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the power system cool down.

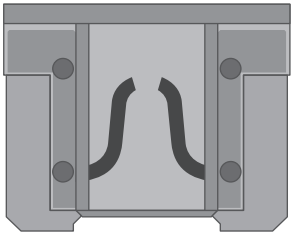
Indicators Come On P. 640

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



Blown Fuse P. 648

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Emergency Towing P. 657

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

What to Do If

Q **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 523

Q **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.

Q **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

A The beeper sounds when:
- The exterior lights are left on.
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.

Q **Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**

A The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.

➡ **Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock®)** P. 153

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

A The beeper sounds when the driver, front passenger, and/or rear passengers are not wearing their seat belts.

Q **Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q **I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tire with an exclamation point. What is that?**

A The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tire, you have to recalibrate the system.

➡ **Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)** P. 422

Q **Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**

A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Q **Why does the shift position automatically change to P when I open the driver's door to check for parking space lines when reversing?**

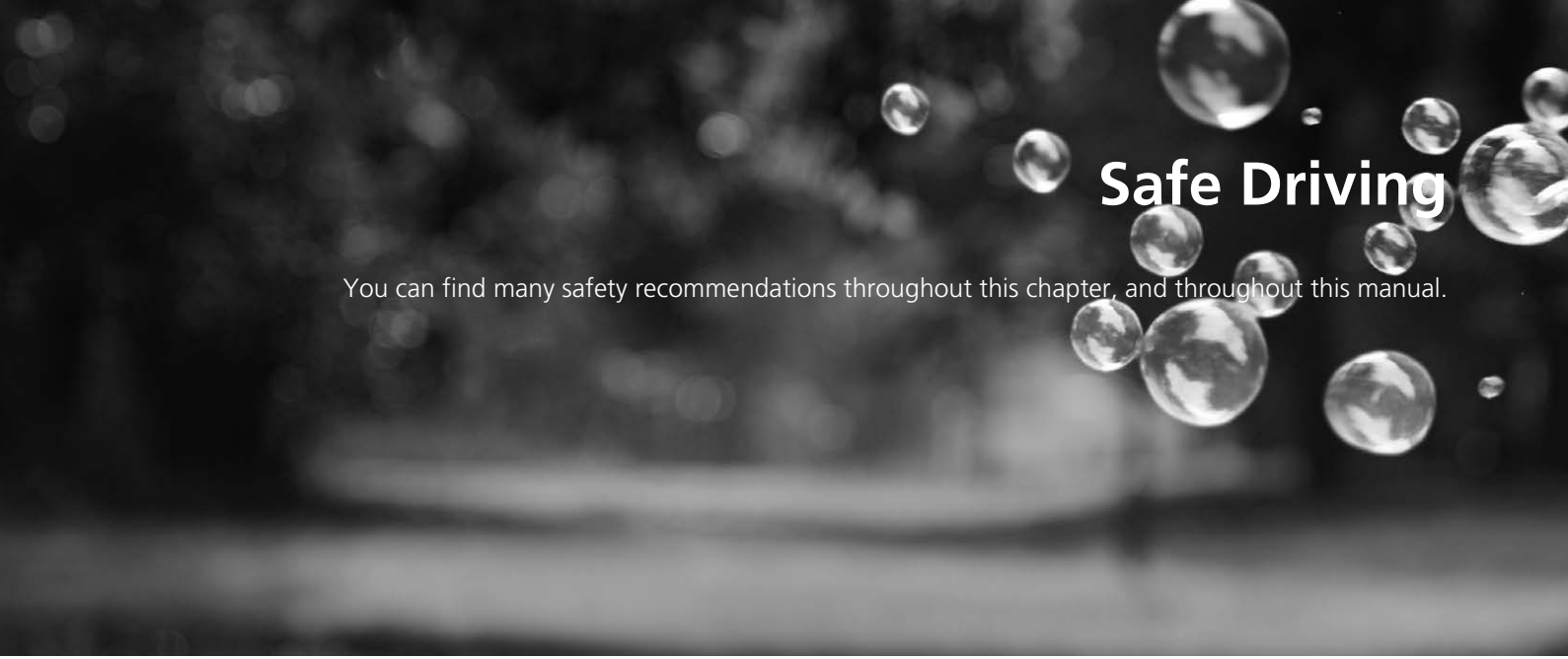
A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Close the driver's door and manually change the shift position.

➔ **When opening the driver's door** P. 406

Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

This page intentionally left blank.



Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions 48
- Important Handling Information..... 50
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features..... 51
- Safety Checklist 52

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts..... 53
- Fastening a Seat Belt..... 58
- Seat Belt Inspection..... 63

Airbags
- Airbag System Components..... 64
- Types of Airbags 67
- Front Airbags (SRS) 67
- Knee Airbags 72
- Side Airbags 76
- Side Curtain Airbags 79
- Airbag System Indicators..... 81
- Airbag Care 84

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 85
- Safety of Infants and Small Children 87
- Safety of Larger Children 100

Safety Labels
- Label Locations 102

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt
A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children
Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards
While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive
Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some states prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

■ Handle high-voltage with care

Familiarize yourself with the charging instructions and warnings supplied in this manual. If using a public charger, also observe the charging station manufacturer's instructions.

Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-highway driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher center gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or rollover if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

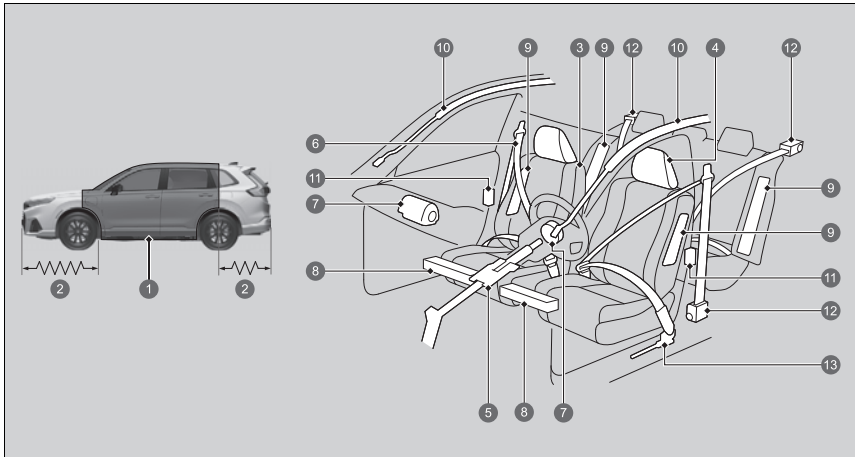
Important Handling Information

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle P. 400
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines P. 395

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



❶ Safety Cage
❷ Crush Zones
❸ Seats and Seat-Backs
❹ Head Restraints
❺ Collapsible Steering Column
❻ Seat Belts
❼ Front Airbags
❽ Knee Airbags
❾ Side Airbags
❿ Side Curtain Airbags
⓫ Door Locks
⓬ Seat Belt Tensioners
⓭ Outer Lap Pretensioners

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and rear outer seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

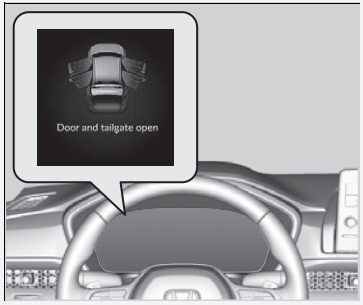
Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive. Check if the charging cable is connected to the vehicle and disconnect it if it is. The vehicle will not operate with the cable connected.

- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors and the tailgate are closed and locked. Locking the doors and the tailgate helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door or the tailgate.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 159
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 199
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 207
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 58
- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  ➡ **Child Safety** P. 85

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.
The front passenger's and rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

➢ **Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 94

About Your Seat Belts

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

If a front or rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then, refasten the belt.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states require you to wear seat belts.

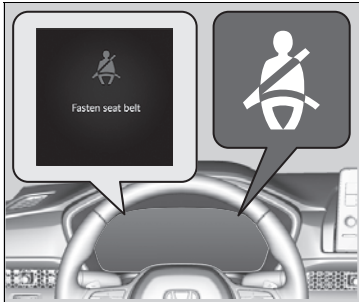
Continued

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

■ Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If the power mode is set to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

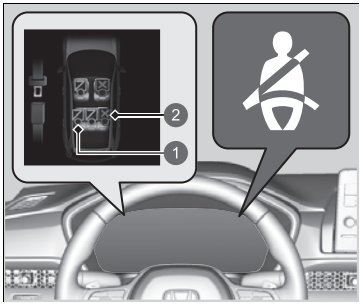
➡ **Protecting Child Passengers** P. 85

The driver information interface uses colors to aid the driver in checking the status of the passengers.

For the front seating positions:

- Green indicates the seat belt is fastened.
- An unfastened gray graphic indicates the seat belt is not fastened and an occupant has not been detected.
- An unfastened red graphic indicates the seat belt is unfastened and an occupant has been detected.

Continued



❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you about the status of the rear seat belts use. The display appears when:

- Any of the rear passenger seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is set to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fasten or unfasten their seat belt.

The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and the beeper sounds if any rear passenger seat belts have been unfastened while driving.

Seat Belt Reminder

The system will not detect a passenger in the rear seats who has not fastened the seat belt.
The driver should check the status of the rear passengers' seat belts at the start of each trip and each time a passenger is seated in the rear seats, using the driver information interface as an aid.
An alert will sound if a passenger in the rear seats unfastens the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion or if motion resumes while the graphic is red.

The driver information interface uses colors to aid the driver in checking the status of the passengers.
For the rear seating positions:

- Green indicates the seat belt is fastened.
- An unfastened gray graphic indicates the seat belt has not been fastened recently.
- An unfastened red graphic indicates the seat belt was unfastened recently.

The system does not monitor harnesses that are part of a child seat, nor the anchors of the LATCH system. While the system can inform you that a seat belt is fastened, it cannot determine whether a child seat is properly installed or used.

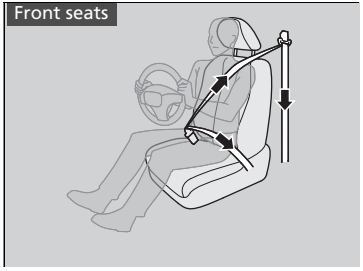
➡ **Protecting Child Passengers** P. 85

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

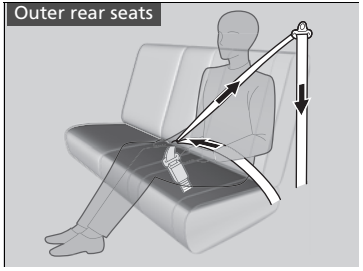
The front seats and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags or the front knee airbags.

Front seats



Outer rear seats



Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

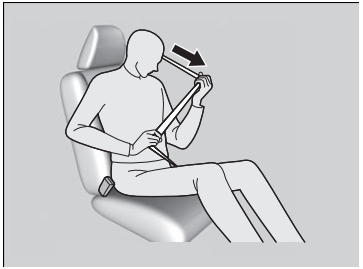
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once.
If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioners on both sides of the vehicle also activate.

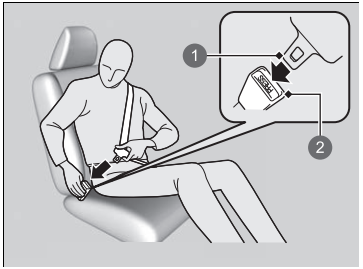
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

Seats P. 199



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

1 Latch Plate
2 Buckle

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

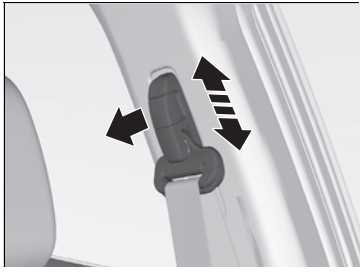
If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for repair.

About Your Seat Belts P. 53
Seat Belt Inspection P. 63

3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the shoulder anchor outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

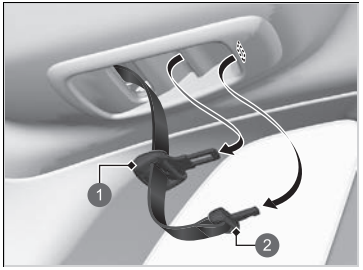
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

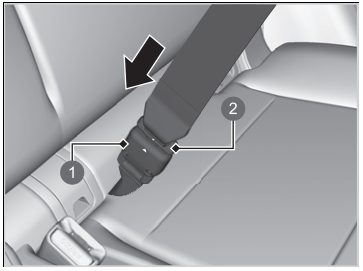
Continued

■ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Small Latch Plate

1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



❶ Anchor Buckle
❷ Small Latch Plate

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.

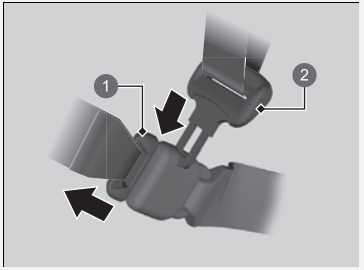
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

⚠WARNING

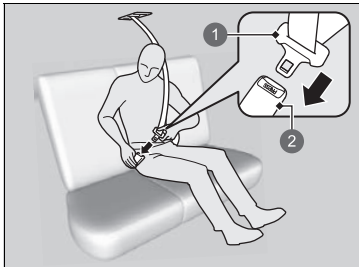
Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unfastened increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.



❶ Small Latch Plate
❷ Latch Plate



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Buckle

3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle.
Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

Continued

■ Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest, avoiding the abdomen.

Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer after any collision.

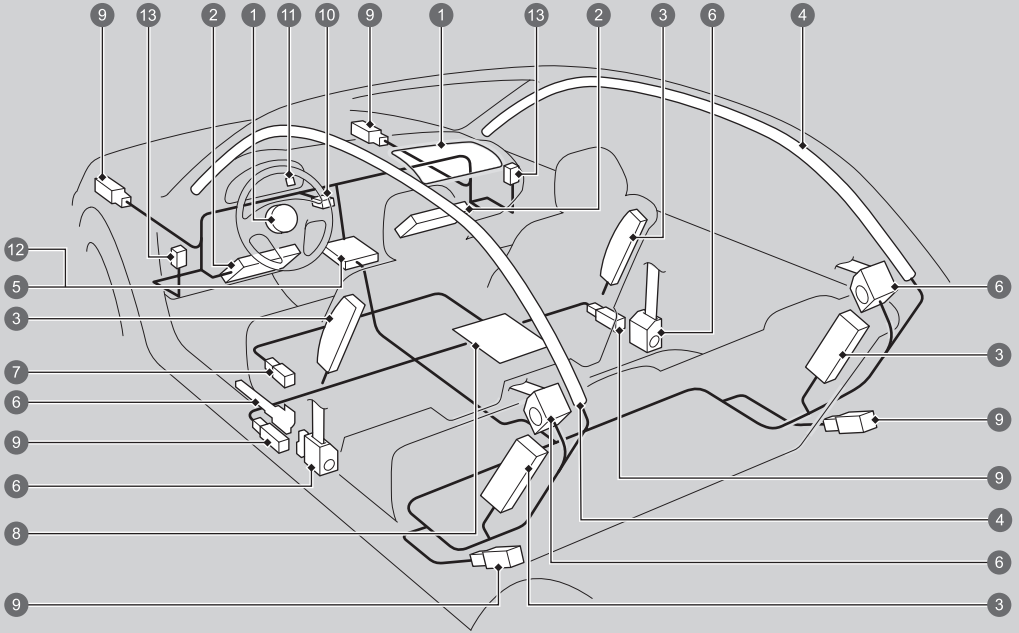
Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Airbag System Components



The front, driver's knee, front passenger's knee, side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

❶ Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

❷ Two knee airbags. The driver's knee airbag is stored under the steering column; the front passenger's knee airbag is stored under the glove box. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

❸ Four side airbags. One for the driver, one for the front passenger, and two for the rear outboard seating positions. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. All are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❹ Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

❺ An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, rollover sensor, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.

❻ Seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats. In addition, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckles incorporate sensors that detect whether or not the belts are fastened.

❼ Driver's seat position sensor. This sensor detects the driver's seat slide position to help determine the optimal deployment of the driver's airbag.

❽ Weight sensors in the front passenger's seat. The sensors are used for occupant classification to activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag.

❾ Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

❿ An indicator on the console panel that alerts you that the passenger's airbag has been turned off.

⓫ An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

⓬ A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags.

⓭ Pressure sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Continued

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front, driver's knee, and front passenger's knee airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with four types of airbags:
- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Knee airbags:** Airbags under the steering column and under the glove box.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's, front passenger's, and rear outer passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Front Airbags (SRS)

During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

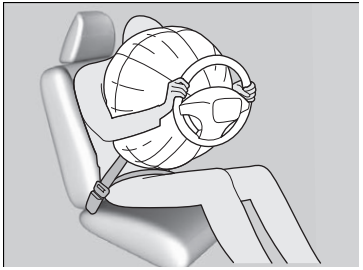
Continued

■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move toward the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move toward the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: In a rollover, your best form of protection is a seat belt or, if your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor, both a seat belt and a side curtain airbag. Front airbags, however, are not designed to deploy in a rollover as they would provide little, if any, protection.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

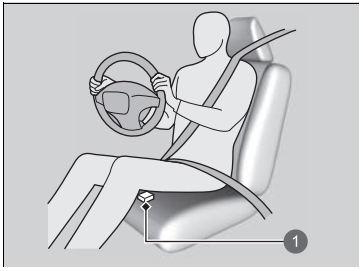
■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Continued

■ Advanced Airbags

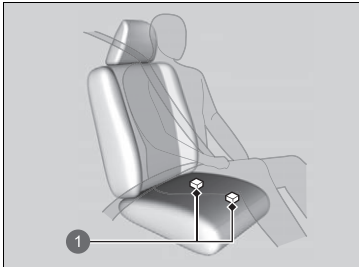
The airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.



The driver's advanced airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

Based on information from this sensor and the severity of the impact, the advanced airbag system determines the optimal deployment of the driver's airbag.

1 Driver's Seat Position Sensor



The front passenger's advanced airbag system has weight sensors. The sensors are used for occupant classification to activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag.

For adult size occupants, the system will automatically activate the front passenger's airbag. If a small adult sits in the front passenger seat and the system does not recognize him/her as an adult, see

➡ **Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** P. 82

1 Passenger's Seat Weight Sensors

Advanced Airbags

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor or the passenger's seat weight sensors, the SRS indicator will come on, and in the event of a crash, the airbag will deploy (regardless of the driver's seating position or passenger's occupant classification) with a force corresponding to the severity of the impact.

➡ **Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator** P. 81

For the advanced front airbags to work properly, confirm that:

- The occupant is sitting in an upright position wearing the seat belt properly and the seat-back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant's feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger's seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat-back pocket.
- The steering wheel and passenger's side dashboard are not obstructed by any object.
- No liquid has been spilled on or under the seat.

We advise against allowing a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger's seat. However, if you do allow a small child or infant to ride in the front passenger's seat, the system is designed to automatically deactivate the front passenger's airbag. Do not let a small child or infant ride in the front passenger's seat if the airbag does not automatically deactivate.

Advanced Airbags

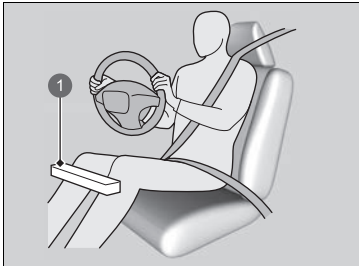
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat or seat-back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- There are no objects placed under or beside the front passenger's seat. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The head restraint is not contacting the roof.
  ➡ **Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** P. 82
- The floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is set in the correct position evenly on the floor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
  ➡ **Floor Mats** P. 604

Knee Airbags

The knee SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help keep the driver and/or front passenger in the proper position and to help maximize the benefit provided by the vehicle's other safety features.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations



❶ Driver's Knee Airbag Location

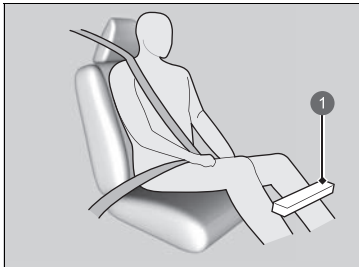
The knee airbag for the driver and the one for the front passenger are housed under the steering column and the glove box respectively.

Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Knee Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near a knee airbag as they can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or even hurt someone if the airbag inflates.

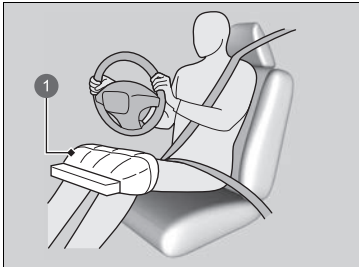
The driver and front passenger should not store any items under the seat or behind their feet. The items can interfere with proper airbag deployment in the event of a moderate to severe frontal collision and may result in inadequate protection.



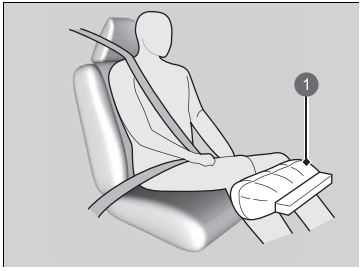
1 Passenger's Knee Airbag Location

Continued

■ Operation



❶ Deployed Driver's Knee Airbag



❶ Deployed Passenger's Knee Airbag

The driver's and front passenger's knee airbag deploy at the same time as the driver's and front passenger's airbag respectively.

Even if the collision is not severe enough to deploy the front airbag, the knee airbag may inflate alone.

■ **When knee airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed objects that cause a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

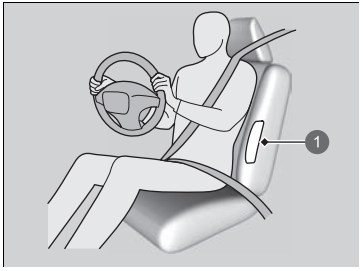
■ **When knee airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver, front passenger, or outer rear seat occupants during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



❶ Side Airbag Location

The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's, passenger's, and rear outer passenger's seat-backs.

Each is marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❶ Side Airbag Location

Side Airbags

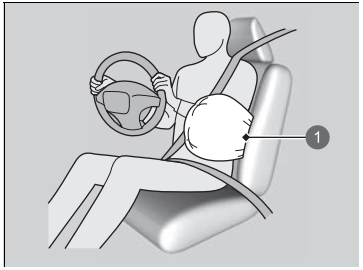
Make sure you, your front seat passenger and rear outboard occupants always sit upright. Leaning into the path of a side airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the seat-back covers without consulting an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. Improperly replacing or covering seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

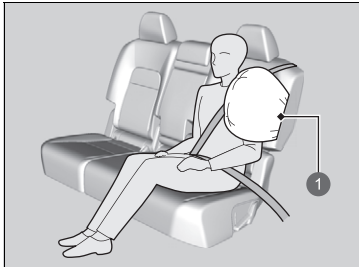
Side airbag deployment is controlled by a pressure sensor inside each front door. Damage or changes to the inside or outside of the doors may negatively affect side airbag deployment. Contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer before changing or repairing a front door.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

1 Deployed Side Airbag



1 Deployed Side Airbag

Continued

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

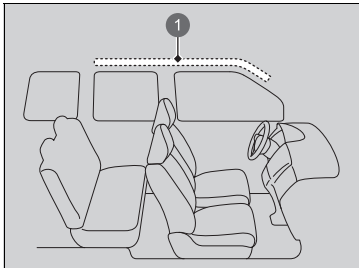
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was toward the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in the outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.

■ Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

❶ Side Curtain Airbag Location

Side Curtain Airbags

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

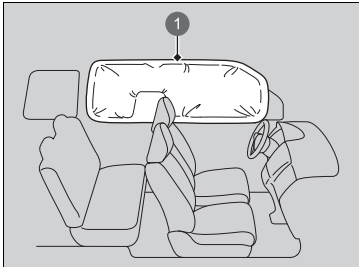
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag deploys even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.

Continued

■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.

1 Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

■ When the power mode is set to ON
The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

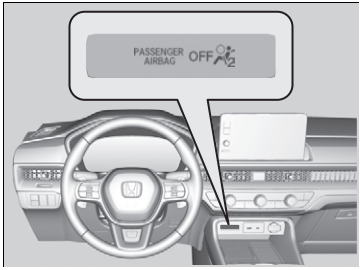
⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Continued

■ Passenger Airbag Off Indicator



■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's airbag has been turned off. This occurs if the seat is empty or when the weight sensors determine that a small child or infant is on the passenger seat.

Children age 12 or under should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.
➡ **Child Safety** P. 85

If the indicator is on, in the event of a crash the passenger's airbag will not deploy. The passenger's knee airbag will not deploy, either.

When you set the power mode to ON, the indicator comes on and goes off a few seconds later to indicate that system checks are being performed. After that, the indicator comes on or off depending on the passenger's occupant classification.

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

To ensure the passenger is detected properly, confirm that:

- The occupant is sitting in an upright position wearing the seat belt properly and the seat-back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant's feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger's seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat-back pocket.
- No liquid has been spilled on or under the seat.
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat or seat-back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- There are no objects placed under or beside the front passenger's seat. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is set in the correct position evenly on the floor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The head restraint is not contacting the roof.

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and go off periodically if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold. For a small adult, depending on physique and posture, the system may not recognize him/her as an adult and thus deactivate the passenger's airbag.
If this occurs, please confirm that the conditions set forth in the above bullet points on the previous page are met.
If the above conditions are met and the indicator is still on, then with the transmission in P, set the power mode to OFF and back to ON.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer as soon as possible if:

- All of the above conditions are met, and the indicator comes on with an adult seated in the front passenger seat.
- The seat is empty and the indicator is off.
- The indicator does not come on and go off after setting the power mode to ON as described.

Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the indicator is on.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer

This would likely disable or affect the proper operation of the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. For U.S. vehicles, contact American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 1-800-999-1009.

Airbag Care

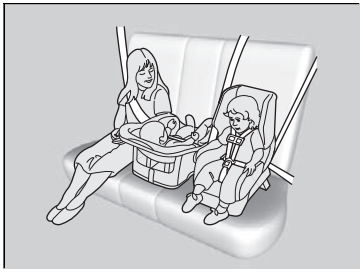
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration recommends that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states have laws restricting where children may ride.

Continued

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the seat belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls, causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

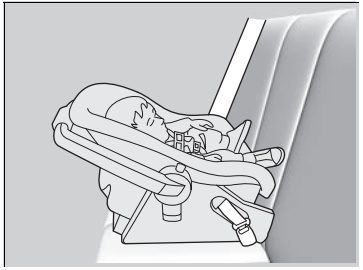
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

Safety Labels P. 102

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat until the infant reaches the seat manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child seat

Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position. Make sure that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front of it.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

Airbags P. 64

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

Experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child so long as the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

Infants should never be seated in a forward-facing position.

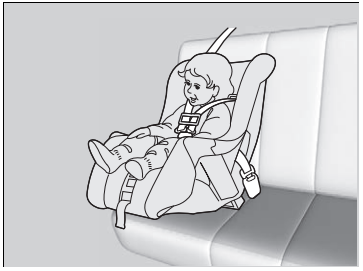
Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.

Do not allow a front seat to rest against a child seat installed in a rear seating position.
The weight sensor in the front seat may not correctly detect the actual weight of the occupant.

Continued

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child seat, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the forward-facing child seat.



■ **Forward-facing child seat placement**

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

■ Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children). Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

Selecting a Child Seat

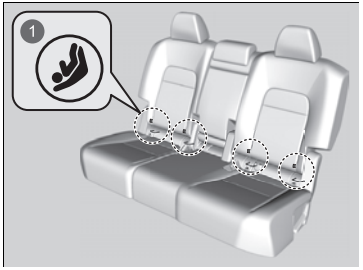
Installation of a LATCH-compatible child seat is simple.

LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

Continued

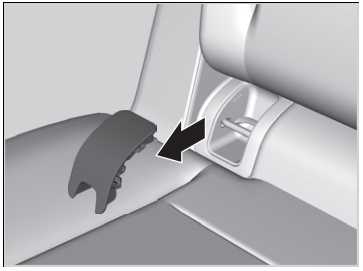
■ Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).



1. Locate the lower anchors under the marks.

1 Marks

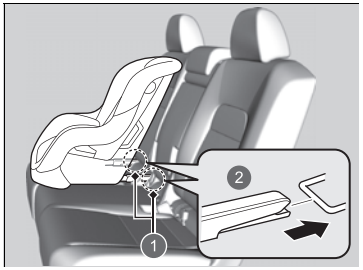


2. Remove the anchor covers to expose the lower anchors.

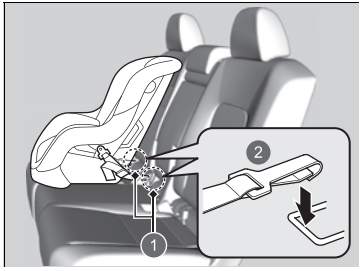
Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

⚠WARNING

Never attach two child seats to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.



❶ Lower Anchors
❷ Rigid Type



❶ Lower Anchors
❷ Flexible Type

3. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.

▶ When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

▶ Install the child seat so that the gap between it and the seat back is as small as possible.

Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

⚠WARNING

Using the outer rear seats' inner anchors to secure a LATCH-compatible child seat in the center seating position may result in failure of the child seat, causing injury or death.

Only use the outer rear seats' inner anchors to install a child seat in the center seating position if the manufacturer's instructions expressly permit.

Installing a LATCH-compatible child seat in the rear center seat

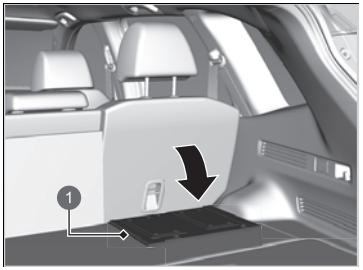
Each outer rear seat is equipped with a pair of lower anchors which are used to secure a LATCH-compatible child seat. The rear center seat, however, is not equipped with anchors of any kind.

The inner and outer anchors are spaced apart at a standard distance of 11 inches (280 mm). The distance between the two inner anchors is 17.3 inches (440 mm).

LATCH-compatible restraint systems that are fitted with rigid-type attachments cannot be installed in the rear center seat. However, a system fitted with flexible-type attachments can be installed in the center seat, provided that the manufacturer's instructions for that system permit the use of the inner anchors with the stated spacing.

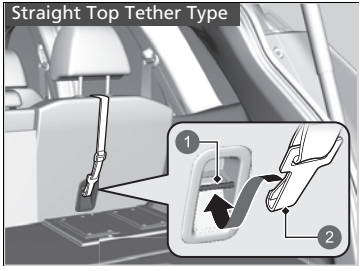
Before seating a child, make sure that the system is properly attached to both the lower anchors and tether anchors.

Continued



1 Board

Straight Top Tether Type



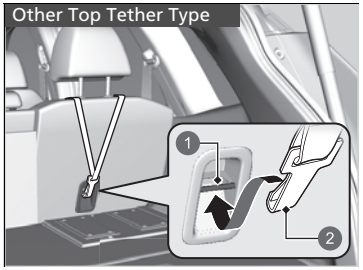
1 Anchor
2 Tether Strap Hook

4. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Fall the board down to access the tether anchor.

6. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
7. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.
8. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
9. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the child seat is properly secured to the vehicle. A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

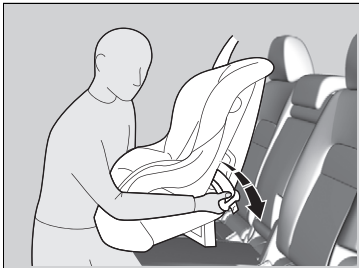


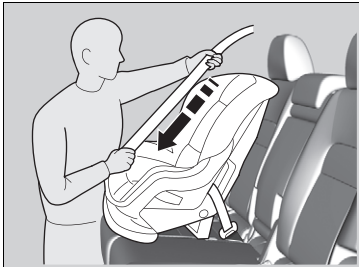
❶ Anchor
❷ Tether Strap Hook

Continued

■ Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat can be installed with a lap/shoulder belt in any rear seat or, if absolutely necessary, the front passenger seat.





1. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.

2. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.

▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

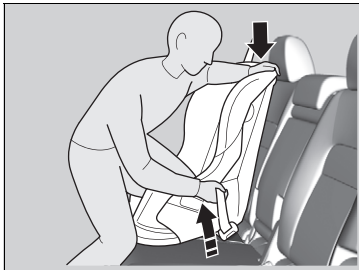
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.

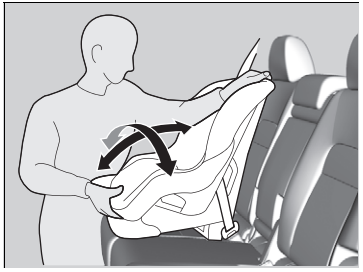
4. Let the seat belt retract a few inches and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.

▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.





5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; less than one inch of movement should occur near the seat belt.

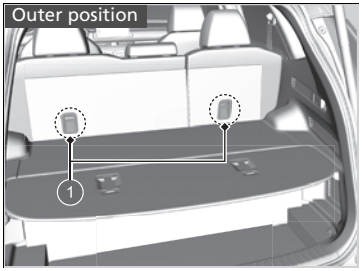
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

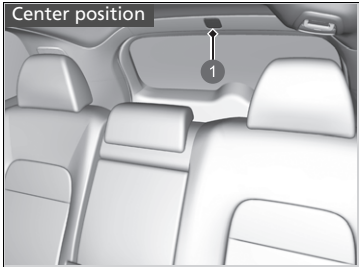
To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

Continued

■ Adding Security with a Tether



❶ Tether Anchor Points

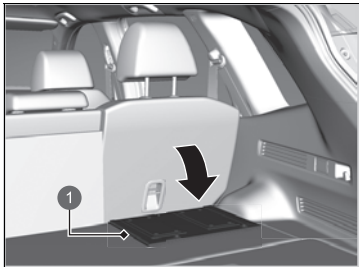


❶ Tether Anchor Point

A tether anchor point is provided behind the rear outer seating positions and in the ceiling for the rear center.
If you have a child seat that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

Adding Security with a Tether

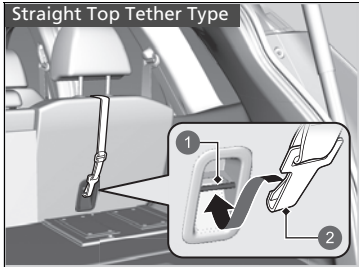
Always use a tether for forward-facing child seats whether using the seat belt or lower anchors.



❶ Board

■ **Using an outer anchor**

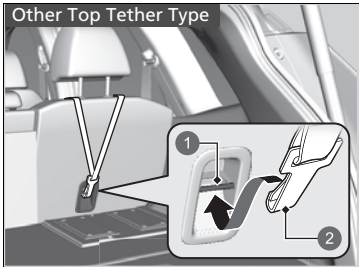
1. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
2. Fall the board down to access the tether anchor.



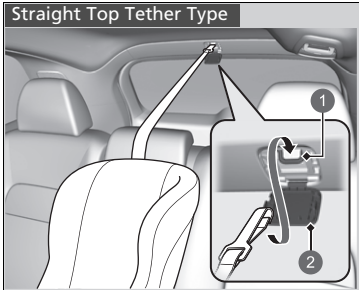
❶ Anchor
❷ Tether Strap Hook

3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

Continued



1 Anchor
2 Tether Strap Hook

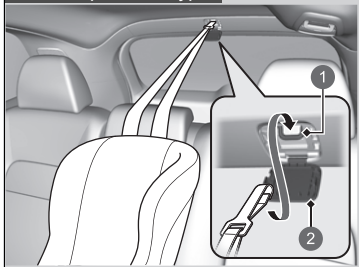


1 Anchor
2 Anchor Cover

■ **Using the center anchor**

1. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Open the anchor cover.
3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

Other Top Tether Type



❶ Anchor
❷ Anchor Cover

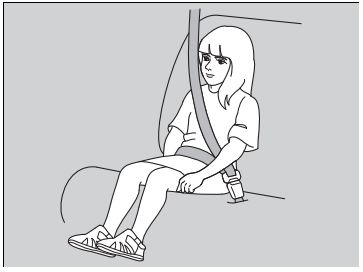
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats

If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Booster Seats

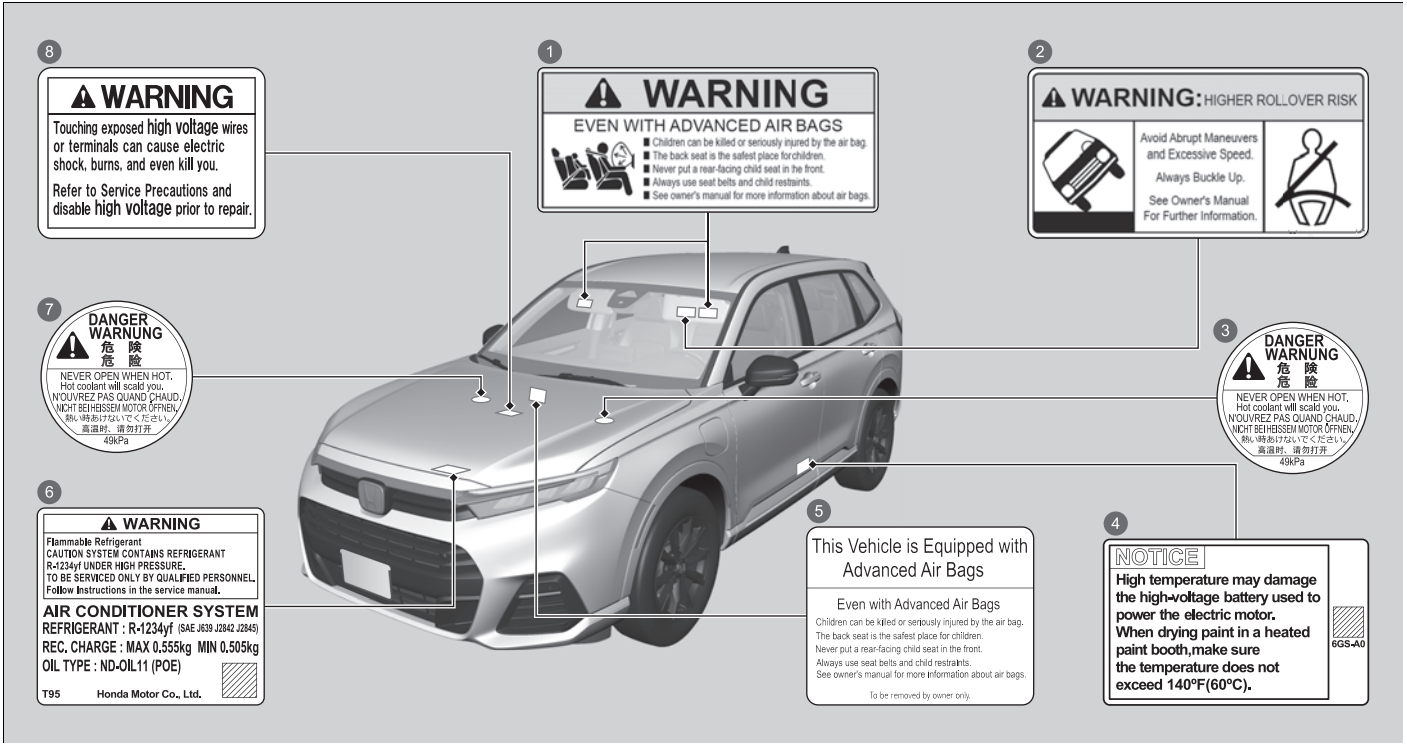
When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g., 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state where you intend to drive.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for a replacement.



❶ Sun Visor
❷ Sun Visor
❸ High Voltage System Coolant Tank B Cap
❹ Information for Painting
❺ Dashboard
❻ Air Conditioner System
❼ High Voltage System Coolant Tank A Cap
❽ FCVCU

This page intentionally left blank.

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators 106
Gauges and Driver Information Interface
Gauges..... 124
Driver Information Interface (Left Side Area).. 129
Driver Information Interface (Right Side Area).. 132

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

BRAKE *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→ P. 108
BRAKE SYSTEM *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 110
POWER SYSTEM *1	**POWER SYSTEM** Indicator	→ P. 111
READY	**READY** Indicator	→ P. 111
EV *1	**EV** Indicator	→ P. 111
BRAKE HOLD *1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→ P. 112
HOLD *1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→ P. 112
*1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	→ P. 112
D	Shift Position Indicator	→ P. 112
*1	Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 112
M	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	→ P. 113
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 113
	Low Fuel Indicator	→ P. 113
H_2	Hydrogen Leak Indicator	→ P. 114
(ABS) *1	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	→ P. 114
*1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 114
*1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→ P. 115
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System Indicator	→ P. 115
OFF	Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator	→ P. 116
*1	Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator	→ P. 116
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→ P. 117
	Lights On Indicator	→ P. 117
	High Beam Indicator	→ P. 117
A *1	Auto High-Beam Indicator	→ P. 117

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

SPORT	**SPORT** Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
NORMAL	**NORMAL** Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
ECON	**ECON** Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
SNOW	**SNOW** Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
AUTO	**AUTO** Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
EV	**EV** Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
SAVE	**SAVE** Mode Indicator	→ P. 118
CHARGE	**CHARGE** Mode Indicator	→ P. 118

*1	Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/Green)	→ P. 118
	System Message Indicator	→ P. 119
	Cruise Mode Indicator (White/Green)	→ P. 120
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator	→ P. 120
○	Immobilizer System Indicator	→ P. 117
○	Security System Alarm Indicator	→ P. 117

*1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 119
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	→ P. 120
*1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 120
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	→ P. 121
*1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 121
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray)	→ P. 123

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
BRAKE	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied. • Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. • Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.
		• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 641

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
BRAKE	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	• **Comes on along with the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 642 • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 641 • **Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 642

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
BRAKE SYSTEM	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor. • Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 391 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
		• Comes on if the brake system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
POWER SYSTEM	**POWER SYSTEM** Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the power system or plug-in charging system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately. • **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. (The fuel cell stops generating electricity) • May come on if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time. ➡ **Maintaining the High Voltage Battery and the FC system** P. 20
		• Comes on when a problem is detected with the hydrogen leak detector system.	• If there is a hydrogen gas leak, the detection system may not be able to stop the leak without operating. Have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer at once.
		• Comes on when the ion filter needs replacing.	• Have the ion exchanger replaced by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately. ➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 565
READY	**READY** Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.	➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 397
EV	**EV** Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the electricity stored in the High Voltage battery, and the FC system is not operating.	—

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 519
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 519
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.	• Stop in a safe place and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately. ➔ **Checking the 12-Volt Battery** P. 598 ➔ **If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 640
	Shift Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift position.	➔ **Shifting** P. 402
	Transmission System Indicator	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately. • **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
		• Blinks if you cannot select P due to a transmission system failure.	• Set the parking brake when parking. • Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

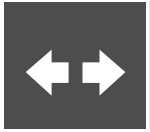
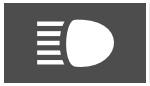
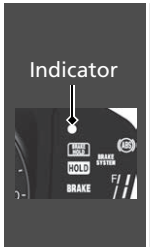
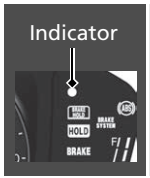
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	• Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled. • Blinks when deceleration does not occur while pulling the paddle selector. • Comes on with **M** when **SPORT** mode is selected and the paddle selector is pulled.	**Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 409
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Blinks and the beeper sounds for a few seconds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON, then the indicator comes on. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON. • Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 55
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is running low on fuel.	• Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Hydrogen Leak Indicator	• Comes on if a hydrogen gas leak is detected.	• Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately. • **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. (The fuel cell stops generating electricity)
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 523
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental Restraint System - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

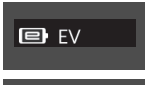
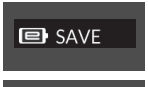
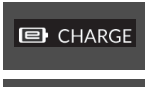
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. • **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. ➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 643
	Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA® is active.	—
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system, hill start assist system, or agile handling assist.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System** P. 419 ➡ **Hill start assist system** P. 399 ➡ **Agile Handling Assist** P. 421
		• Comes on if the VSA® system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA®.	➡ **VSA® On and Off** P. 420
	Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tires' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been calibrated.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tires are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated. ➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 423
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
		• Comes on if the TPMS is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 580
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the parking, tail, and other external lights are on.	➡ **Lights** P. 182
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.	➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 186
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.
	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	➡ **Security System Alarm** P. 173

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	SPORT Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **SPORT**.	• The ambient meter goes off and gauges in the instrument panel light up in red as long as **SPORT** mode is selected. ➡ **Drive Mode System** P. 414
	NORMAL Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **NORMAL**.	➡ **Drive Mode System** P. 414
	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **ECON**.	➡ **Drive Mode System** P. 414
	SNOW Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **SNOW**.	➡ **Drive Mode System** P. 414
	AUTO Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the e mode to **AUTO**.	➡ **e Button** P. 16
	**EV** Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the e mode to **EV**.	➡ **e Button** P. 16
	**SAVE** Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the e mode to **SAVE**.	➡ **e Button** P. 16
	**CHARGE** Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the e mode to **CHARGE**.	➡ **e Button** P. 16
	Hill Descent Control System Indicator (White/ Green)	• Lights up in white when the Hill Descent Control System is on and ready to use. • Lights up in green when the Hill Descent Control System is in operation.	➡ **Hill Descent Control System** P. 417

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, roll the right selector wheel to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 132 • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. • The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the right selector wheel is rolled.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 391 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the button. • Lights up in green while the system is in operation.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 464
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator	• Comes on when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow indicator comes on.	➡ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 477
	Cruise Mode Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you change to cruise mode. • Lights up in green when you have set a speed for cruise control.	➡ **To Switch ACC with Low Speed Follow to Cruise Control** P. 481
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 391 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. • Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.	➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 485 ➔ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 495
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS™, Low Speed Braking Control, or blind spot information system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the parking sensor.	• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➔ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 391 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS™ and Low Speed Braking Control are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS™ shuts itself off.	• Indicator may come on temporarily if the radar sensor cannot detect any objects when passing through an enclosed space such as a tunnel, or driving on an open road without any structures nearby. • The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned. • Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you have cleaned the radar sensor. ➡ **Radar Sensor** P. 512
			• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 510
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 510 • It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the sonar sensor.	• Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of the sonar sensor. ➔ **Low Speed Braking Control** P. 450
		• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor. • Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high.	• **Comes on while driving** - Something may be interfering with the blind spot information system sensor. Check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles. • The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down. ➔ **Blind Spot Information System** P. 427
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/ Gray)	• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS™, Low Speed Braking Control, parking sensor system, and blind spot information system are on. • Lights up in green and gray when one or more of the systems above are off. • Lights up in gray when all systems above are off.	➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 456 ➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 436 ➔ **Blind Spot Information System** P. 427 ➔ **Low Speed Braking Control** P. 450 ➔ **Parking Sensor System** P. 526

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, High Voltage battery charge level gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph or km/h.

Speedometer

You can change the Speed/Distance units.
➔ **Speed/Distance Units** P. 142
➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

If you change the unit from miles and mph to km and km/h, the current vehicle speed in mph appears next to the digital speedometer.

1 Vehicle Speed in mph

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the approximate amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

■ POWER Gauge

Shows the output of the electric motor.
When driving in **EV** mode, the **POWER** gauge turns green and shows the value of the maximum output that can be driven in **EV** mode.

e Button P. 16

■ CHARGE/DECEL Gauge

Shows the degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged.
When the deceleration paddle selector is being used, it shows the strength of deceleration.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Continued

■ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The high voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the high voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the high voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charge remains the same.

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of miles or kilometers that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±5°F if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

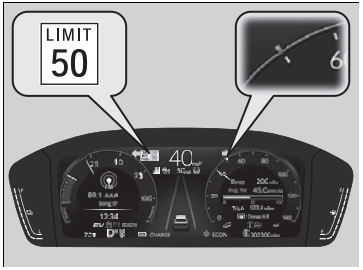
It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Adjusting the outside temperature display

You can adjust the temperature reading.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

Continued

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System



Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving.

If speed limit warning is activated, the sign icon blinks when the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected is exceeded by a threshold, when compared with the vehicle speed.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 504

Traffic Sign Recognition System

The default speed limit warning threshold is the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected.

You can adjust the threshold for speed limit warning.

Customized Features P. 326

■ Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist.

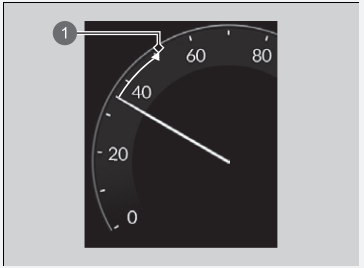
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 464

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 485

Traffic Jam Assist P. 495

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist

When you set speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow or cruise control, a set speed mark will be displayed on the speedometer.



1 Set Speed

Driver Information Interface (Left Side Area)

Shows the current mode for audio and phone information, etc.

➔ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 248
➔ ***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 343

■ Clock

Shows the clock.

Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **Clock** P. 146

You can choose whether the clock is displayed on the driver information interface.

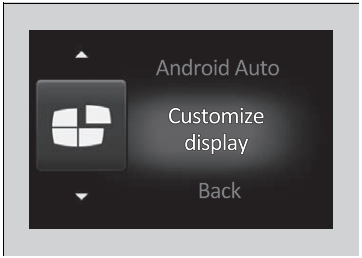
➔ **Customize Display** P. 130

Continued

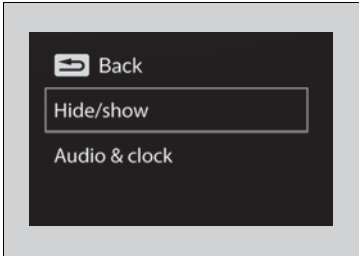
■ Customize Display

■ Arrange audio source on the left side area

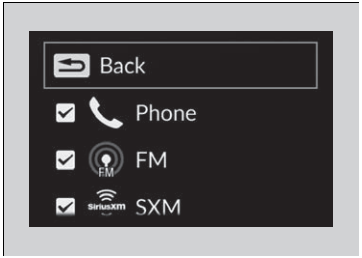
You can choose which sources to display on the audio source screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the left selector wheel.



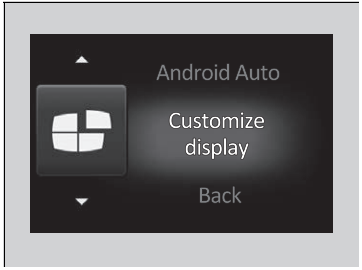
3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between audio sources, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

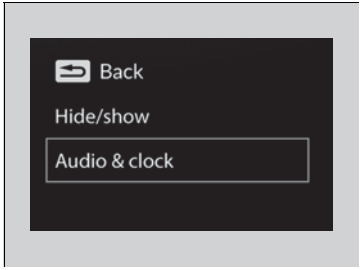
When you customize settings, shift to P.

■ Turn the displaying on the left side area on and off

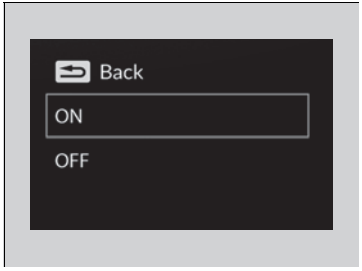
You can select whether the current audio information and clock appear on the left side area.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Audio & clock**, then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the left selector wheel.

Driver Information Interface (Right Side Area)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Limited stopping power**, **High voltage battery thermal problem**, or **Close hydrogen fuel lid** message is displayed.

- **If the Limited stopping power Warning Appears** P. 640
- **If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears** P. 646
- **If the Close hydrogen fuel lid Warning Appears** P. 647

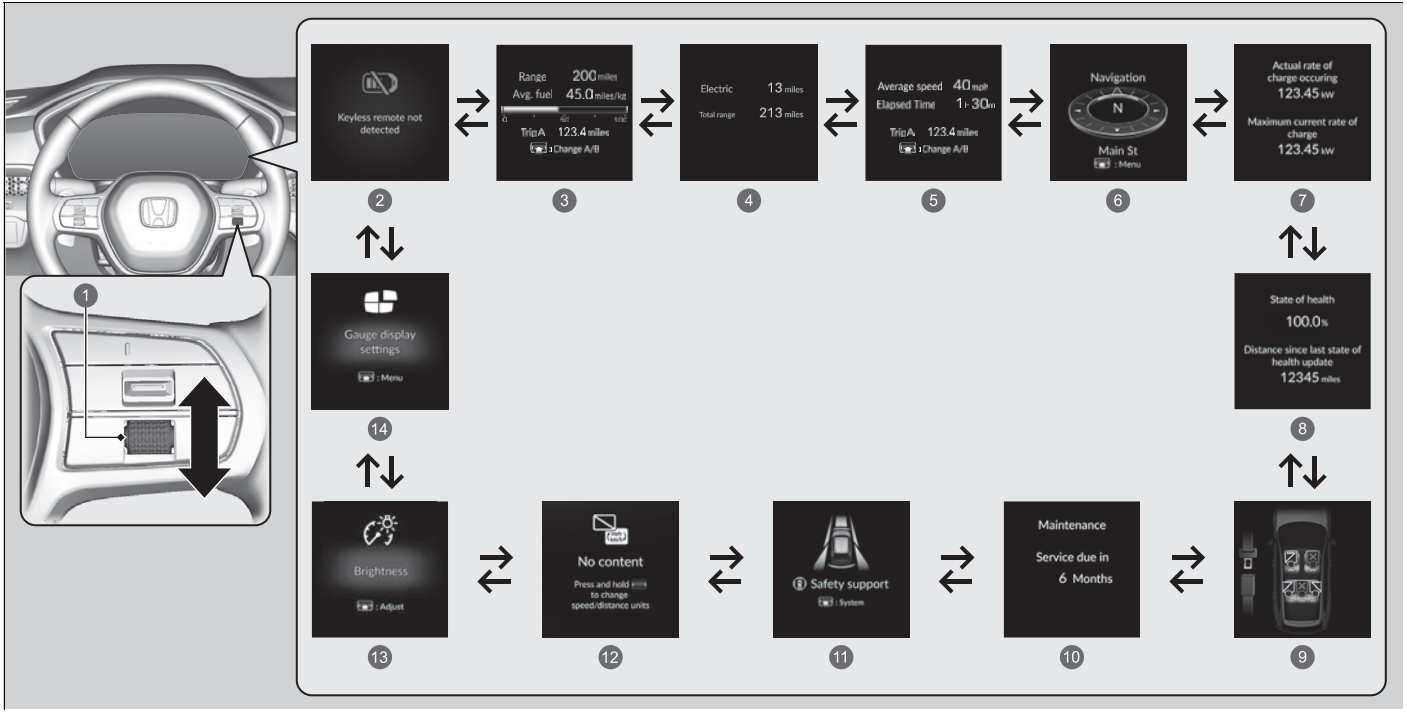
■ Switching the Display

Roll the right selector wheel to view different types of content.

Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.

Gauge Display Settings P. 143

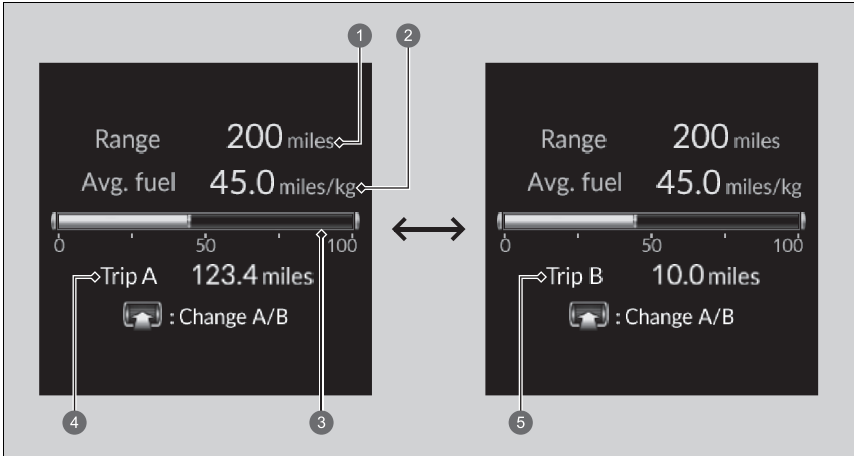


1. Right Selector Wheel
2. Warning Messages ➔ P. 144
3. Range/Fuel/Trip Meter ➔ P. 134
4. Total Range ➔ P. 136
5. Speed/Time/Trip Meter ➔ P. 137
6. Navigation/Compass ➔ P. 138
7. Charging Information ➔ P. 139
8. Battery Health ➔ P. 139
9. Seat Belts ➔ P. 139
10. Maintenance ➔ P. 139
11. Safety Support ➔ P. 140
12. No Content/Unit Change ➔ P. 142
13. Brightness ➔ P. 142
14. Gauge Display Settings ➔ P. 143

Continued

■ Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Range
2. Average Fuel Economy
3. Instant Fuel Economy
4. Trip Meter A
5. Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of miles or kilometers driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press and hold the right selector wheel, and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in miles/kg or km/kg. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in miles/kg or km/kg.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimate is based on the fuel economy of your previous trips.

Trip meter

The trip meter can reset automatically after recharging or when the power mode is set to OFF (**IGN OFF**).

➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

When the trip meter's reset timing is set to **When charged**, if the battery warming system is operating due to low outside temperatures, then the trip meter may not be able to automatically reset.

➔ **Battery Warming System** P. 558

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

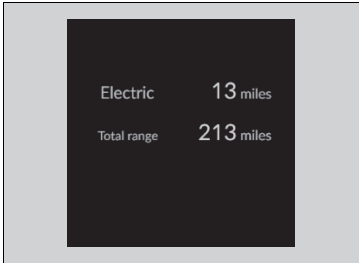
➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Continued

■ Total Range



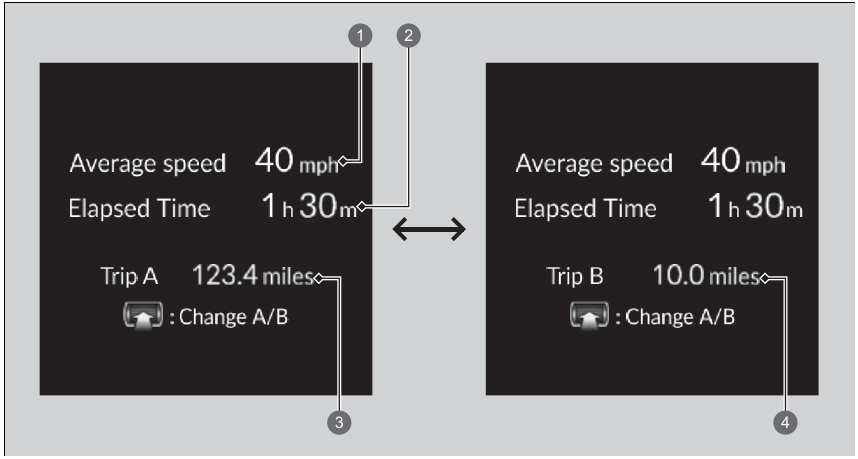
Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimate is based on the fuel economy of your previous trips.

Total Range

The displayed range may change even when the vehicle is stationary.

■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



❶ Average Speed
❷ Elapsed Time
❸ Trip Meter A
❹ Trip Meter B

Continued

■ Trip meter
➔ **Trip meter** P. 135

■ Elapsed time
Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average speed
Shows the average speed in mph or km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Navigation

■ Compass
Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions
When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Apple CarPlay® or Android Auto, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.
➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**
➔ **Apple CarPlay** P. 307
➔ **Android Auto™** P. 313

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

Navigation

You can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by pressing the right selector wheel.
➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

Navigation features may not be available for all devices or apps.

■ Charging Information

Shows charging information.

■ Battery Health

Shows the maximum capacity of the battery compared to when it was new. The **---** will be updated after a few cycles of you driving your vehicle and then charging it. If the display does not update, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

■ Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 55

■ Maintenance

Shows the Maintenance Minder™.

➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 565

Continued

■ Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS™, Low Speed Braking Control, blind spot information system, and parking sensor system, such as On, Off, or Failure, by color and letters.

The following colors indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Gray: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the color amber, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

To turn each system on or off, first press the right selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 456
- **Blind Spot Information System** P. 427
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 436
- **Low Speed Braking Control** P. 450
- **Parking Sensor System** P. 526

You can also confirm the status of each function by the color of the safety support indicator.

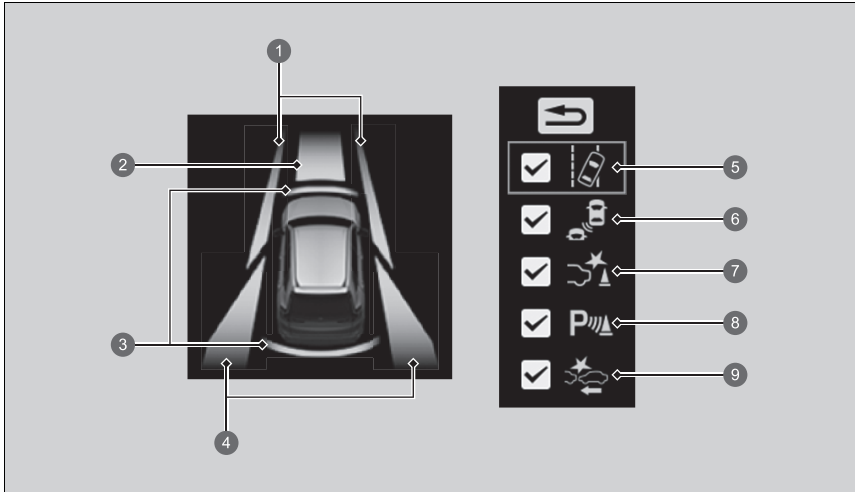
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 121
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray)** P. 123

Even when the Low Speed Braking Control icon is green, if the **Rear Sensor Setting** is turned off, the brake assist will not operate when reversing.

- **Customized Features** P. 326

Even when the parking sensor system icon is green, if the **Rear Sensor Setting** is turned off, the rear parking sensor will not operate when reversing.

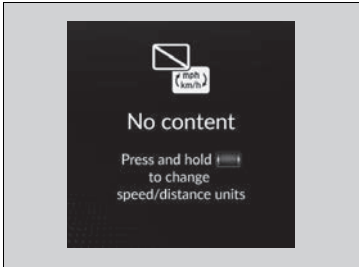
- **Customized Features** P. 326



❶ Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
❷ Area Info for CMBS™
❸ Area Info for Low Speed Braking Control and Parking Sensor System
❹ Area Info for Blind Spot Information System
❺ Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
❻ Blind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info
❼ Low Speed Braking Control Icon and Status Info
❽ Parking Sensor System Icon and Status Info
❾ CMBS™ Icon and Status Info

Continued

■ Speed/Distance Units



Enables you to show another unit on the driver information interface and audio/information screen and set the displayed measurements to read in either miles and mph or km and km/h.

Press and hold the right selector wheel when you select the No Content/Unit Change screen on the driver information interface. Each time you do this, the unit will change from miles and mph to km and km/h or vice versa. After this, a confirmation screen will appear for a few seconds.

■ Brightness

Press the right selector wheel when the **Brightness** screen is displayed.

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the right selector wheel to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Roll the right selector wheel up.
Dim: Roll the right selector wheel down.

Press the right selector wheel to exit.

Brightness

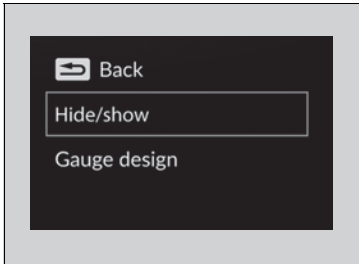
The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.
- The brightness decreases when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness increases when the ambient light is bright.

You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

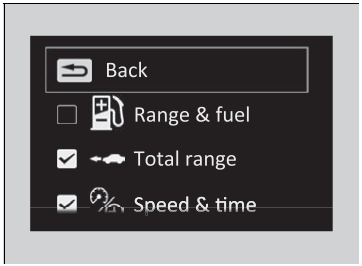
■ Gauge Display Settings

■ Arrange content on the right side area

You can choose which contents to display on the right side area.



1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Gauge display settings** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the right selector wheel.



3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll between contents, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Arrange content on the right side area

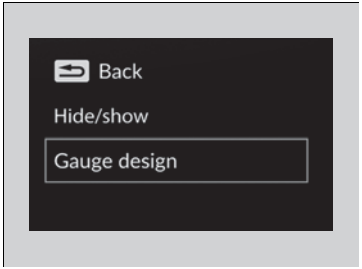
Contents that are gray cannot be removed from the right side area.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

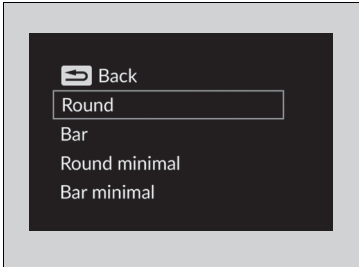
Continued

■ Change gauge design

You can change the gauge design to a round or bar design.



1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Gauge display settings** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Gauge design**, then press the right selector wheel.



3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the right selector wheel.

Change gauge design

When using the **Round minimal** or **Bar minimal** gauge design, a simplified display is used when ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation.

■ Warnings

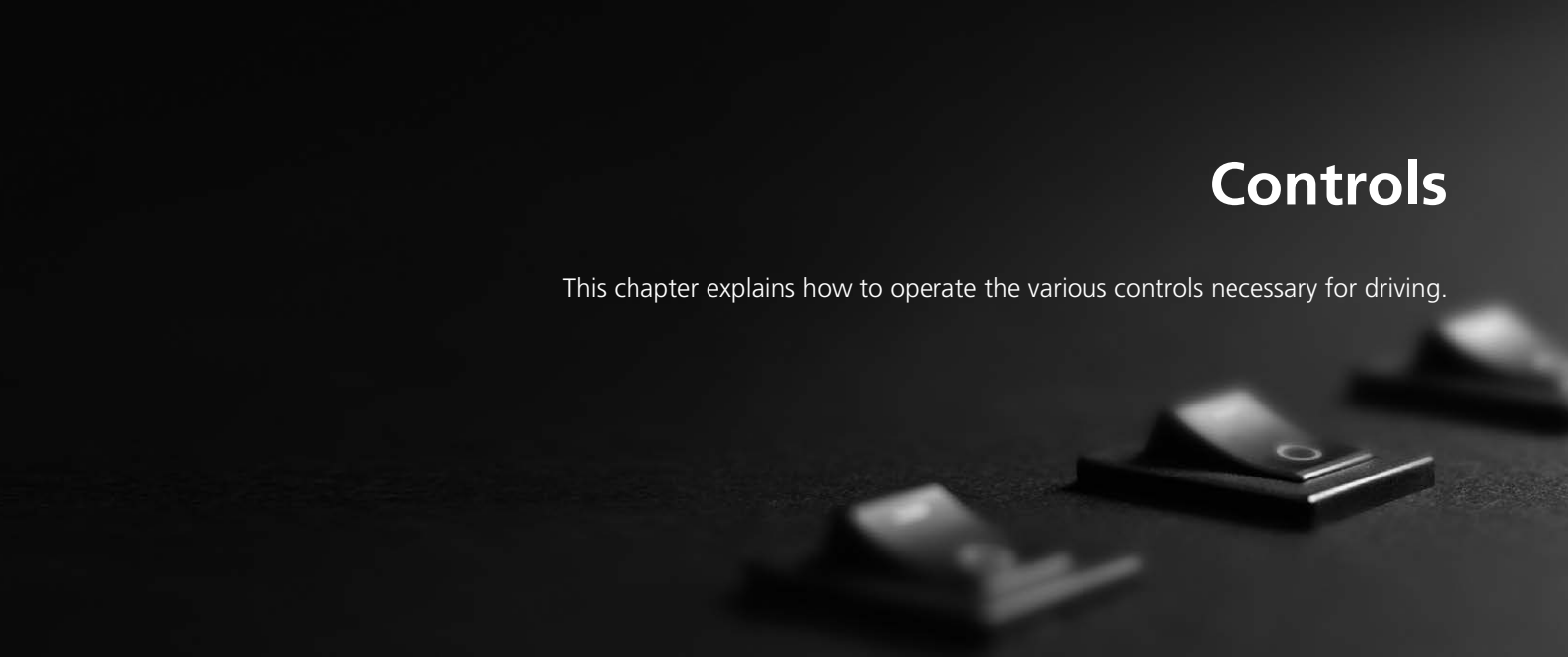
You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Warnings

If there are multiple warnings, you can roll the right selector wheel to see other warnings.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



Clock 146
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
- Key 147
- Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength ... 149
- Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 150
- Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 159
- Childproof Door Locks 162
- Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 163

Tailgate 164
Security System
- Immobilizer System 173
- Security System Alarm 173

Windows 176
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
- POWER Button 179
- Turn Signals 181
- Lights 182
- Auto High-Beam 186
- Wipers and Washers 189
- Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button ... 192
- Driving Position Memory System 193
- Adjusting the Steering Wheel 196

Mirrors 197

Seats 199
Interior Convenience Items 210
Climate Control System
- Using Automatic Climate Control 232
- Automatic Climate Control Sensors 239

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

Clock Setup P. 261

Adjusting the Clock

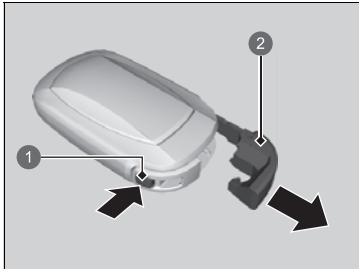
The clock in the instrument panel also changes when the audio/information screen clock is adjusted.

Key

This vehicle comes with the following key:

Use the key to turn on and off the power system, and lock and unlock the doors, tailgate, and charge lid.

Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

1 Release Button
2 Built-in Key

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 173

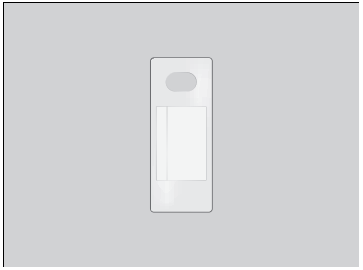
Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system, and lock and unlock all the doors, charge lid, and tailgate.

In the following cases, activating the power system, locking/unlocking the doors/tailgate/charge lid may be inhibited, or operation may be unstable:

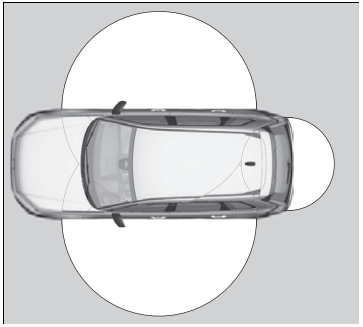
- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



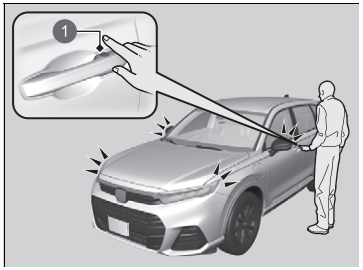
When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and charge lid, and open the tailgate.
You can lock/unlock the doors, charge lid, and tailgate within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) from the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

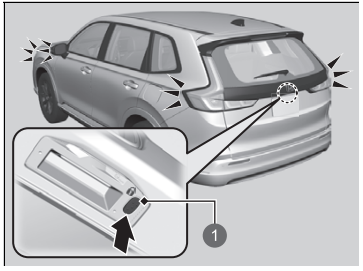
If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➡ **Interior Lights** P. 210

Please wipe off any residue such as car shampoo, groundwater, or anti-freeze in the vicinity of the outside door handle, as there is a risk that the keyless access system may not work properly.



❶ Door Lock Sensor



❶ Lock Button

■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

▶ All the doors, charge lid, and tailgate lock and the security system sets.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.

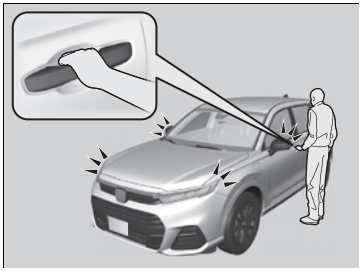
Using the Keyless Access System

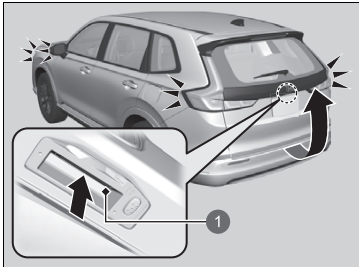
If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inch (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, or tailgate.

Continued





1 Outer Handle

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the driver's door handle:

▶ The driver's door and charge lid unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

▶ All the doors and tailgate unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the tailgate outer handle:

▶ The tailgate unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

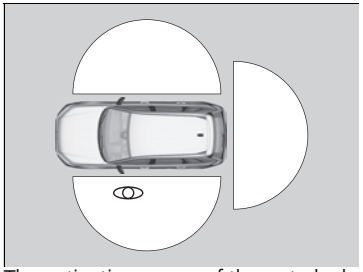
Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash, beep, and door unlock mode settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

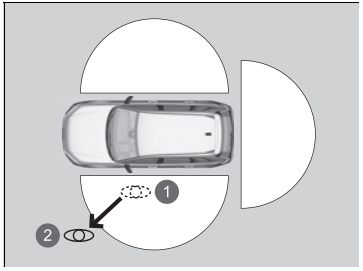
➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

➡ **Using the Tailgate Outer Handle** P. 169



The activation range of the auto lock function is about 5 feet (1.5 m)



■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock®)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors, tailgate and charge lid will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed, or all doors are closed and tailgate begins power close operation, and the keyless remote is within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s) and tailgate.

1. While within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the vehicle.
▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

2. Carry the keyless remote beyond about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock®)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen. If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors and tailgate are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and tailgate will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door or tailgate after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be canceled.

Continued

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds, and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock®)

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

▶The beeper will not sound.

- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all doors and tailgate are closed.

▶The beeper will sound.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door, tailgate, or the hood is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors and tailgate.

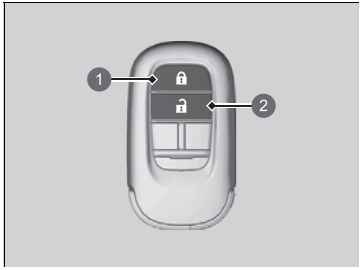
Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



❶ Lock Button
❷ Unlock Button

■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors, tailgate, and charge lid lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door and charge lid unlocks.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors and tailgate unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

Replacing the Remote Battery P. 600

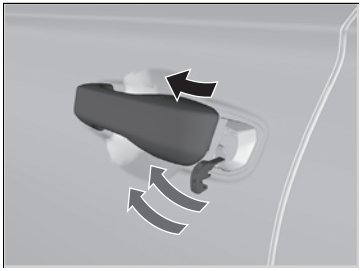
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

Customized Features P. 326

Continued

■ Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the built-in key instead. The keyhole is behind the door handle.



Pull and hold the door handle.
Insert the built-in key into the key cylinder from below the handle and then turn it.

Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

If the lock button of the keyless remote does not work, refer to the following.

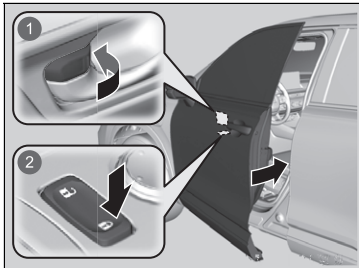
➡ **Locking a Door Without Using a Key** P. 157

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.

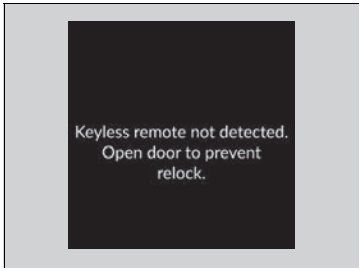


■ Locking the front doors

Push the lock tab forward ❶ or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ❷, and close the door.

■ Locking the rear doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.



■ Lockout protection function

If the vehicle cannot detect the keyless remote, lockout protection activates:

- ▶ A beeper sounds, some exterior lights flash, the doors unlock, and a message appears on the driver information interface.
- ▶ This allows you to open a door in case the keyless remote is still inside the vehicle.

If you do not open a door, all doors relock after 15 seconds.

To avoid non-detection, make sure to keep the keyless remote away from cell phones and other devices that may cause signal interference.

Continued

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

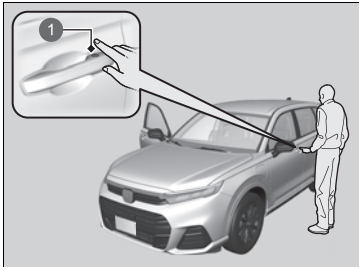
You can change the lockout protection operation setting.

Customized Features P. 326

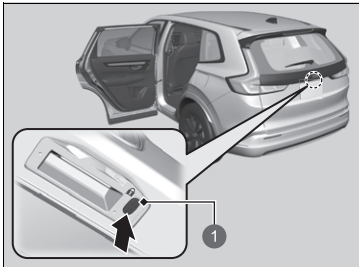
When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors, tailgate, and charge lid lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

■ Lock Presetting



❶ Door Lock Sensor



❶ Lock Button

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the doors and tailgate.
Activate lock presetting after closing the driver's door.

1. Touch the door lock sensor on the front door, press the lock button on the tailgate or press the lock button on the keyless remote.
▶ Alert sounds and lock presetting is activated.

2. Close all doors and the tailgate.
▶ Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors and tailgate are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

Lock Presetting

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing the power tailgate on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury. Make sure all hands and fingers, especially children's, are clear of the power tailgate.

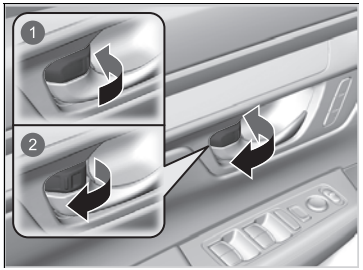
Lock presetting will be reset if a door or the tailgate is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

You can turn this function on and off.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



❶ To lock
❷ To unlock

■ Locking a door
Push the lock tab forward.

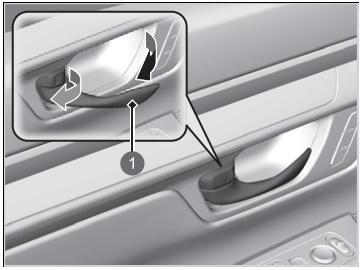
■ Unlocking a door
Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all of the other doors, tailgate, and charge lid lock at the same time.
When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door and charge lid will unlock.

Continued

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

❶ Inner Handle

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

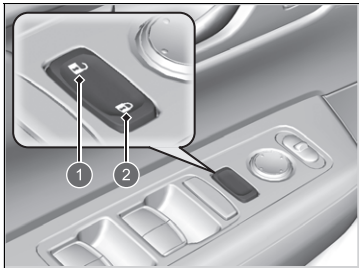
To avoid all the doors unlocking use the lock tab on the driver's door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door.
▶ This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to unlock all the time, customize the **Auto Door Unlock** setting to **OFF** using the audio/information screen.
➢ **Customized Features** P. 326

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.
➢ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 162

Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors, tailgate, and charge lid.

❶ To unlock
❷ To lock

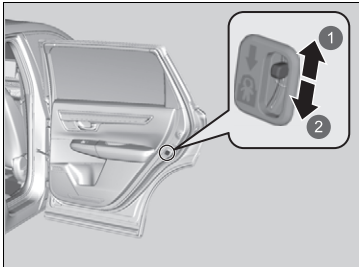
Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either front door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors, tailgate, and charge lid lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

❶ Unlock
❷ Lock

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors and tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Driver's door open mode

All doors and the tailgate unlock when the driver's door is opened.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 326

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:
► Avoid possible damage.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

⚠WARNING

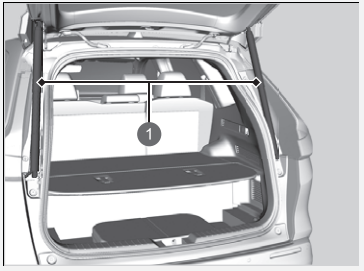
Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the cargo area when closing the tailgate.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Make sure cargo or other items do not touch the tailgate support struts.



1 Tailgate Support Struts

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button on the driver's side control panel, pressing the outer handle or inner button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the center of the rear bumper for hands free access.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in P.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

⚠WARNING

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed.
Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

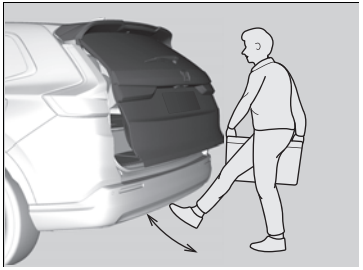
When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

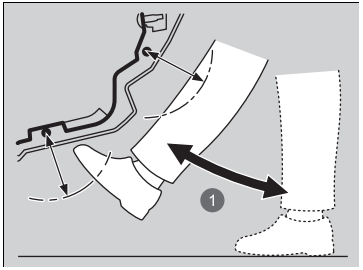
The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:
- You activate the power system while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

Continued

■ Using the Hands Free Access





Use a forward and back kicking motion for about 1 second under the center of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.

▶ Some exterior lights will flash and a beeper will sound, then the tailgate begins to move.

❶ About 1 second

Using the Hands Free Access

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

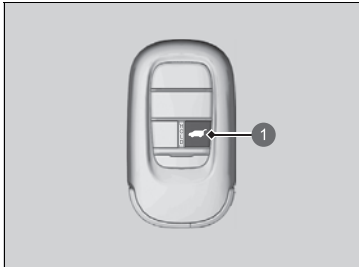
When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.
To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen and then select **OFF** for the feature.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long or sweep your foot from side to side, the power tailgate does not open or close.

This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote on you.

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



❶ Power Tailgate Button

Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

Anytime: The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

When Unlocked: The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

Customized Features P. 326

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

If you replace the 12-volt battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

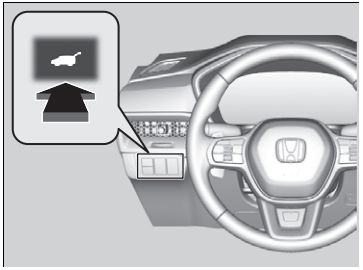
Installing aftermarket components other than Honda Genuine Accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your cargo in and out.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open or closing.

Continued

■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate

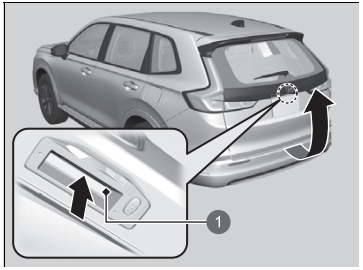
Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

■ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



❶ Outer Handle

If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

▶ The beeper sounds.

▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the outer handle for more than one second.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the outer handle and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

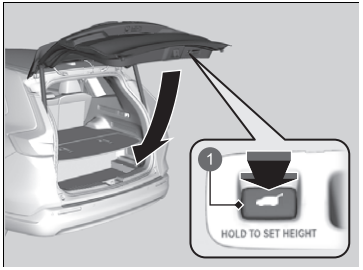
- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.
- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the cargo area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be closed.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

Continued

■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button



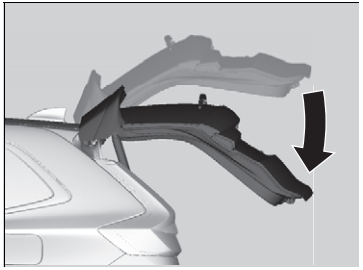
Press the tailgate inner button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

▶ The beeper sounds.

If you press the tailgate inner button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the tailgate inner button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

❶ Tailgate Inner Button

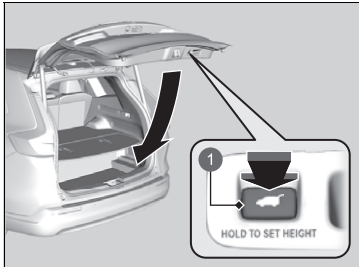
Programming Tailgate Position



The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programed.

To program:

1. Open the tailgate to the desired position.



2. Press and hold the tailgate inner button. You will hear one long beep, followed by two short beeps.

❶ Tailgate Inner Button

Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programed, even if you push the tailgate inner button.

If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow directions for step 2.

Continued

■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

Auto-Closer

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you press the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

NOTICE

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, with snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, hood, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

However, the alarm activates if a door is opened with the key and then the hood is opened before the power mode is set to ON.

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system alarm deactivates.

Continued

■ When the security system alarm activates
The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm
Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system, or the power mode is set to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm
The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:
- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The hood is closed.
- All doors and tailgate are locked from outside with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets
The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

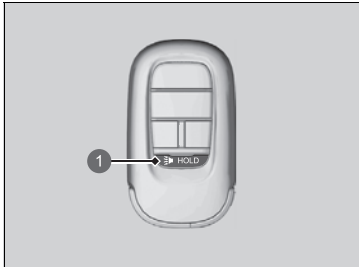
■ To cancel the security system alarm
The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:
- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the hood with the hood release handle.
- Taking the transmission out of P.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

■ Panic Mode



1 Panic Button

■ The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

■ Canceling panic mode

- Press any button on the remote transmitter.
- Set the power mode to ON.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

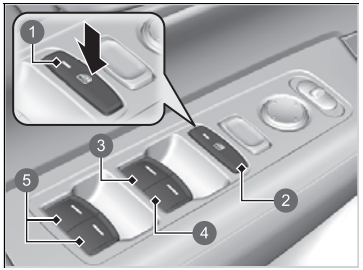
⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
Opening either front door cancels this function.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



❶ Indicator
❷ Power Window Lock Button
❸ Driver's Window Switch
❹ Front Passenger's Window Switch
❺ Rear Passenger's Window Switch

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it stops closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

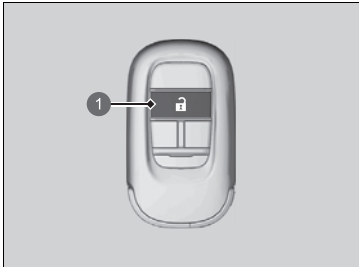
The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

While driving with any of the windows open, you may hear a booming, throbbing, or helicopter-type noise or pressure. This is called wind buffeting. This is a normal occurrence that can be minimized.

If you hear a wind buffeting noise with any of the windows open, lower all of the other windows slightly.

Continued

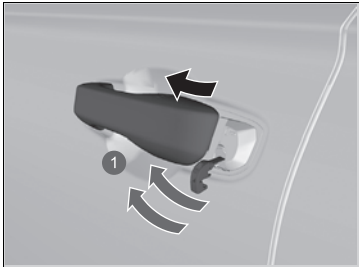
■ Opening the Windows with the Remote



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it. If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

1 Unlock Button

■ Opening the Windows with the Key



Pull and hold the outer handle. Insert the key into the key cylinder completely from below the handle.

To open: Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

1 Open

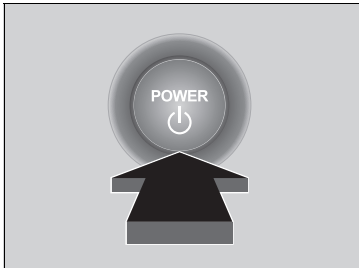
Opening the Windows with the Remote

You can turn off or on to open the windows with the keyless remote setting using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 326

POWER Button

■ Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→ VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:
Vehicle power is turned OFF.
ACCESSORY:
The audio system and some accessories can be used.
ON:
All accessories can be used.

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

■ Power Mode Reminder

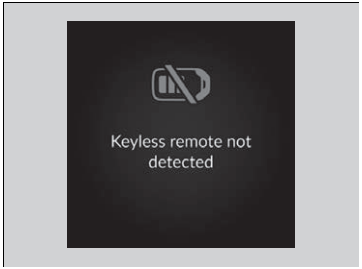
If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

POWER Button

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

Continued

■ Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY
The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON
An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Keyless Remote Reminder

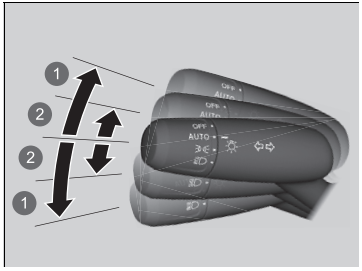
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and all the doors are closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been started, you can no longer change the power mode or restart the power system. Always make sure that the keyless remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the keyless remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the keyless remote is within the system's operational range.

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ ❶: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ ❷: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

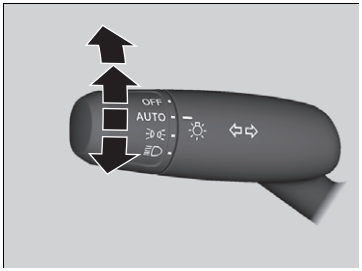
Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

➡ **Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators** P. 117

Lights

■ Headlights/Parking Lights



The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.

The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

■ Manual operation

Headlights/parking lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Parking lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Headlight/parking lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the transmission is in P and the parking brake is applied.

▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:

- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The transmission is changed out of P and the parking brake is released.

Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

Lights On Indicator P. 117

Headlights/Parking Lights

When the parking lights are on, the side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights will also switch on.

When the light switch is turned to or and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

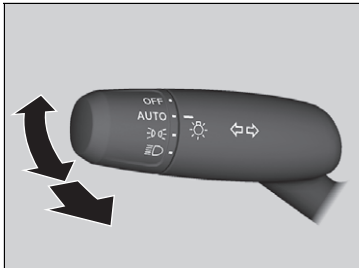
When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and parking lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

If you suspect that the headlights are not positioned properly, have the vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.



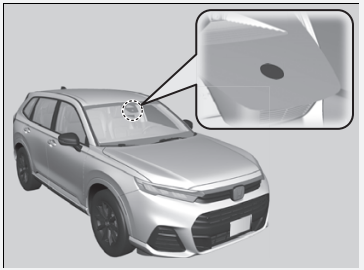
■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

▶ Release the lever to return to low beams.

Headlights/Parking Lights

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover the light sensor.



You can adjust the auto light sensitivity as follow:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is
Max	Bright
High	
Mid	
Low	Dark
Min	

Customized Features P. 326

Continued

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.
The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

■ Daytime Running Lights

The parking/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO** or .
- The parking brake is released.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

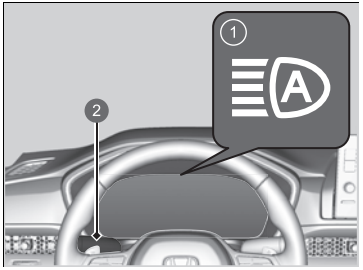
Auto High-Beam

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Auto High-Beam Indicator
❷ Light Switch

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever toward you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to AUTO then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognize light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windshield, refer to the following.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 510

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windshield around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply the windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam		Low beam
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 23 mph (37 km/h) or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.	⇔	One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 15 mph (24 km/h) or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever toward you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to ≡D.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Continued

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light toward the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windshield wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected dense fog.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

Customized Features P. 326

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

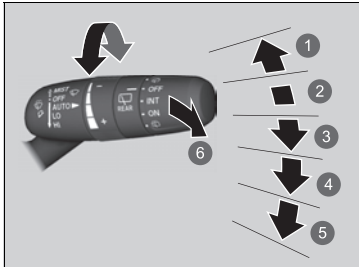
- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windshield is clean.
  Clean the windshield if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windshield Wiper/Washer



❶ **MIST**
❷ **OFF**
❸ **AUTO**
❹ **LO**: Low speed wipe
❺ **HI**: High speed wipe
❻ Washer

The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, AUTO, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

When lifting the front wiper arms, move them into the maintenance position before lifting them.

Lifting the Front Wiper Arms P. 584

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

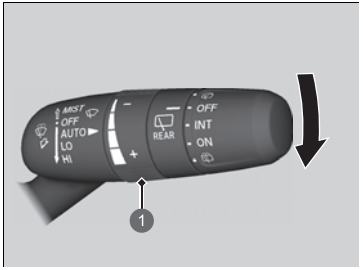
NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defogger to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Continued

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers



❶ Adjustment Ring
−: Low Sensitivity
+: High Sensitivity

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

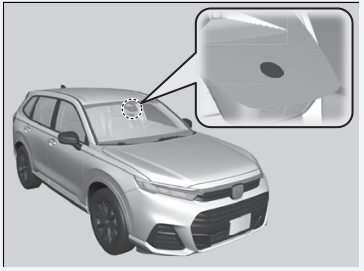
The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.

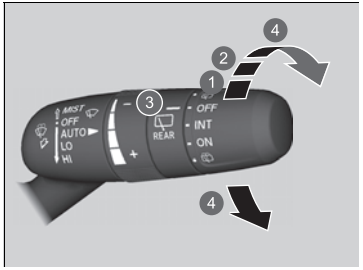


NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



❶ **INT**: Intermittent
❷ **ON**: Continuous wipe
❸ **OFF**
❹ Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ( )

Sprays on the rear window while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

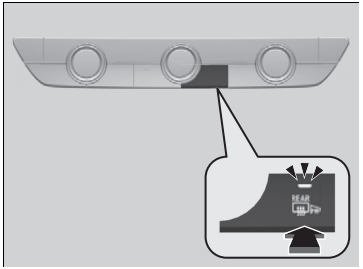
■ Operating in reverse

When you put the transmission into R with the windshield wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
AUTO (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low-speed wipe) **HI** (High-speed wipe)	Continuous

Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button

Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.



The rear defogger and heated door mirror automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button

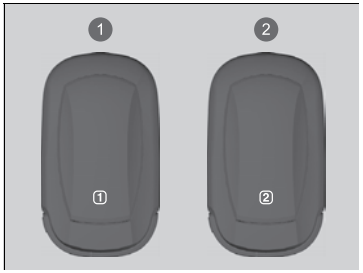
This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C), the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

Driving Position Memory System

You can store two driver's seat positions (except for power lumbar) with the driving position memory system.
When you unlock and open the driver's door with a keyless remote, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button **1**.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button **2**.



The driver's seat moves rearward depending on the set seating position once you.

- Stop the vehicle.
- Put the transmission in P.
- Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- Open the driver's door.

Once the power mode is in the ACCESSORY position, the driver's seat moves forward to the **DRIVER 1** or **2** preset position.

1 DRIVER 1
2 DRIVER 2

Driving Position Memory System

Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.
Customized Features P. 326

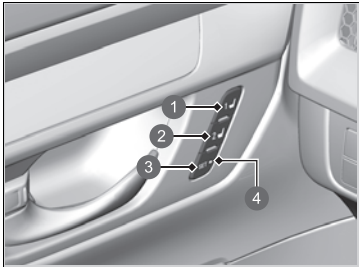
The driver's seat easy exit feature can be turned ON/OFF.
Customized Features P. 326

System Operation
The system will not operate if:
- The transmission is out of the P position.
- Either memory button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The seat position is adjusted while in operation.
- Either of the memorized positions set fully to the rear.

The system may not recognize a key if:
- The key is in close proximity to a cell phone or other wireless device.
- Both keys are in the vehicle at the same time.
- The Driving Position Memory System is disabled in customized features.
- Opening driver's door without fully grabbing door handle.

Continued

■ Storing a Position in Memory



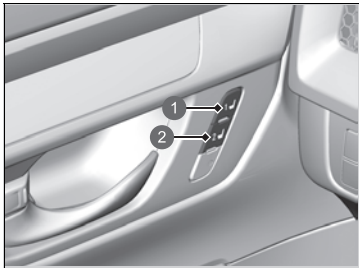
❶ Memory Button **1**
❷ Memory Button **2**
❸ **SET** Button
❹ Indicator Light

1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
▶ The **SET** button indicator light will come on.
3. Press memory button 1 or 2 within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
▶ You will hear the beeper, and the **SET** button indicator light goes off.

Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:
- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

■ Recalling the Stored Position



❶ Memory Button **1**
❷ Memory Button **2**

1. Put the transmission into P.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (1 or 2).

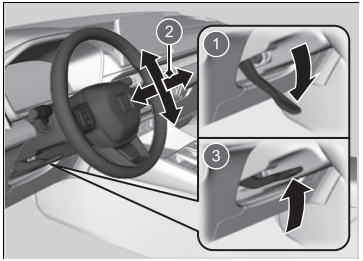
The seat will automatically move to the memorized position.

▶▶Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:
- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (1 or 2).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Put the transmission into a position other than P.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



❶ Release
❷ Adjust
❸ Lock

1. While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

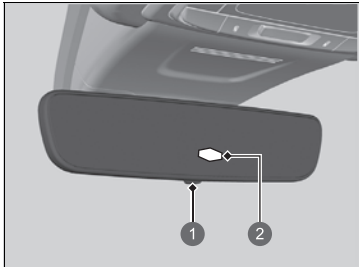
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the AUTO button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the AUTO indicator comes on.

1 Auto Button
2 Sensor

Mirrors

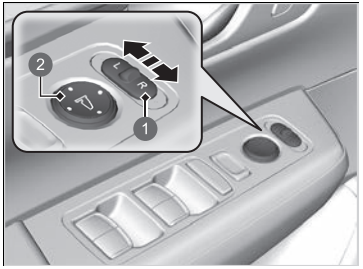
Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 199

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.

Power Door Mirrors



❶ Selector Switch
❷ Adjustment Switch

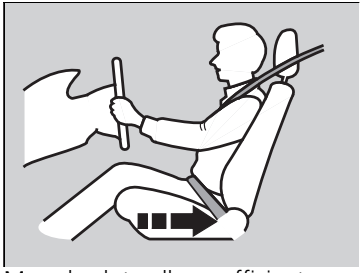
You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ **Mirror position adjustment**

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat, and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

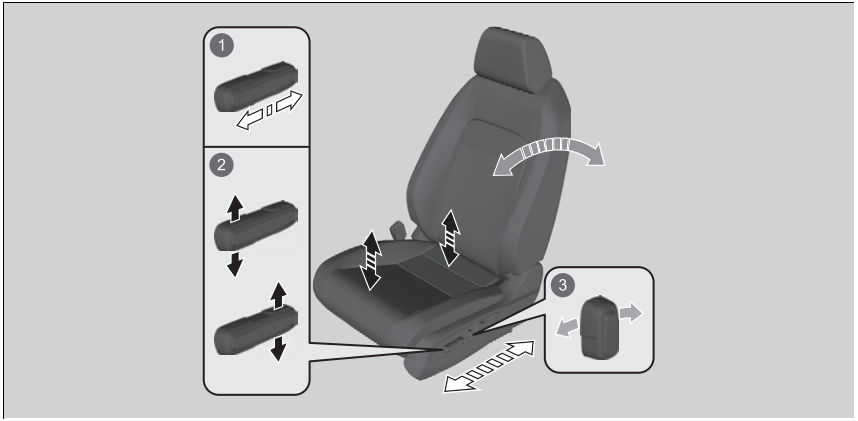
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration recommends that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

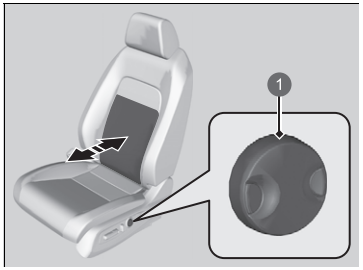
Continued

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front power seats



❶ Horizontal Position Adjustment
❷ Height Adjustment (Driver's seat only)
❸ Seat-back Angle Adjustment



❶ Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

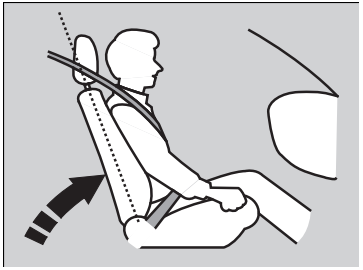
■ **Lumbar support adjustment switch (Driver's seat only)**

Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support.

Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar support.

Continued

■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

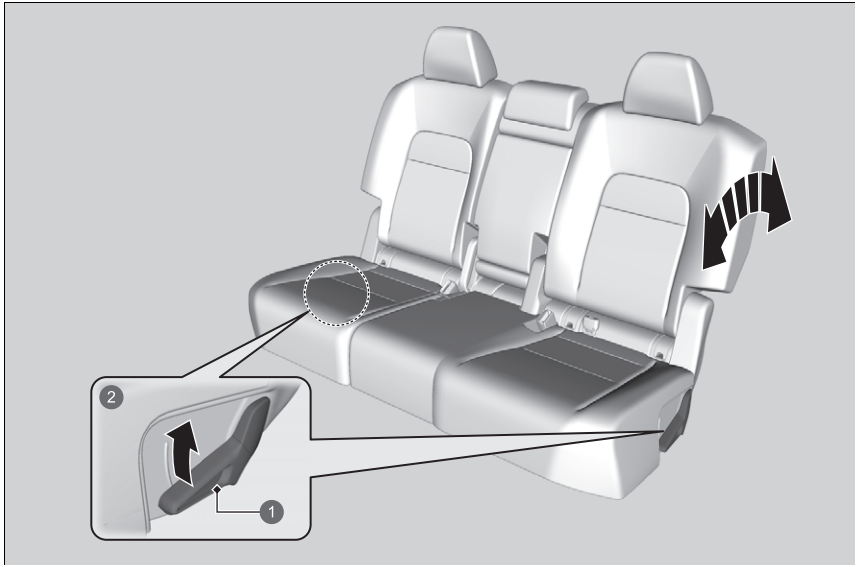
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

Adjusting the Seat Positions



❶ Lever

❷ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

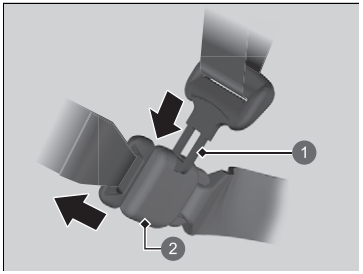
Rear Seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Continued

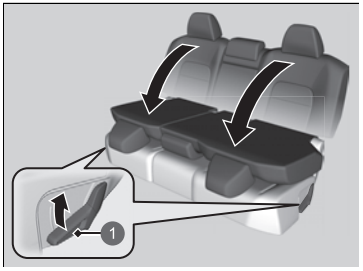
■ Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Anchor Buckle

1. Store the center seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
   ➡ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor** P. 60
3. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seat-back.



❶ Release Lever

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

Make sure all items in the cargo area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

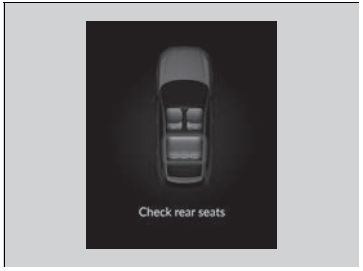
To lock the seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.
➡ **Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** P. 82

Make sure the seat-back, head restraints, and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving.
Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the center shoulder belt is re-positioned in the holding slot.

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you of the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the power mode was set to ON.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.
Customized Features P. 326

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power system is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠WARNING

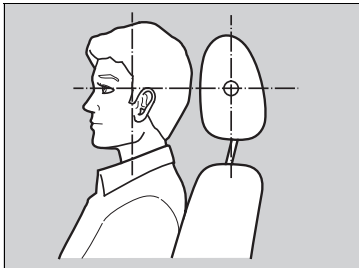
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

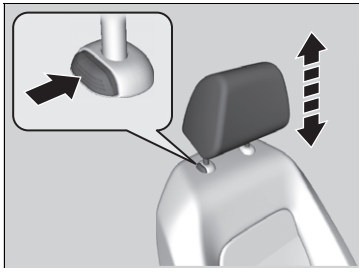
Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

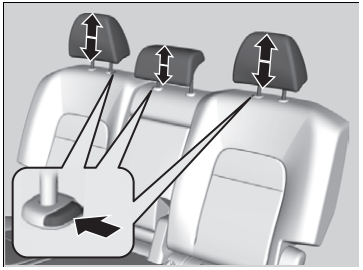
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Continued

■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

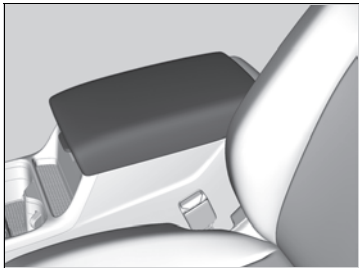
Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

To remove and install the head restraints, recline the seat-back slightly forward as the space between the ceiling and the seat-back is limited.

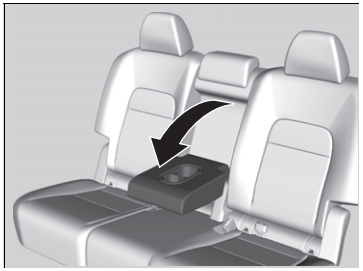
Armrest

■ Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

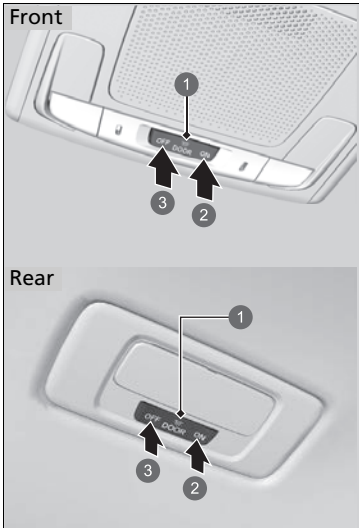
■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the center backrest.

Interior Lights

■ Interior Light Switches



❶ Door Activated Position
❷ **ON**
❸ **OFF**

■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- When the driver's door is unlocked.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and turn off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.
The lights turn off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

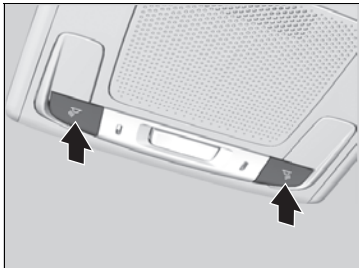
The interior lights turn off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

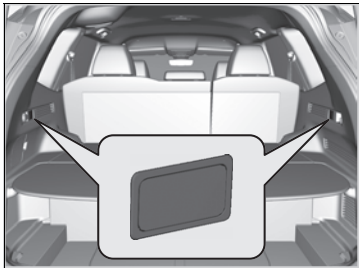
If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

Map Light Switches



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the switches.

Cargo Area Lights



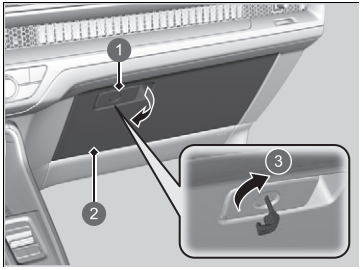
The cargo area lights come on when you open the tailgate.

Map Light Switches

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the switches.

Storage Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

You can lock the glove box with the built-in key.

❶ Handle
❷ Glove Box
❸ To lock

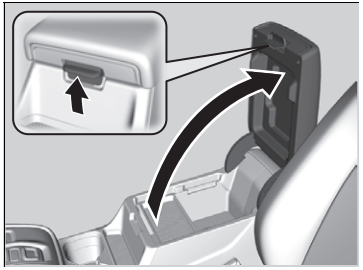
Glove Box

⚠WARNING

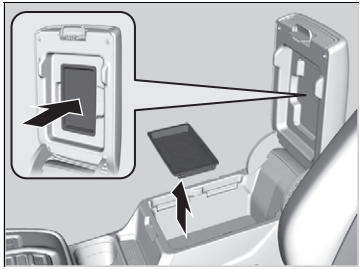
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

■ Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

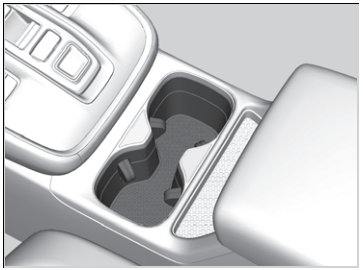


■ Removable tray

The tray can be removed and stored on the bottom surface of the armrest.

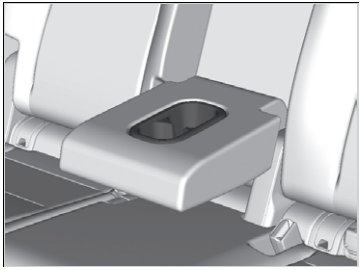
Continued

■ Beverage Holders



■ Front seat beverage holders

Located in the console between the front seats.



■ Rear seat beverage holders

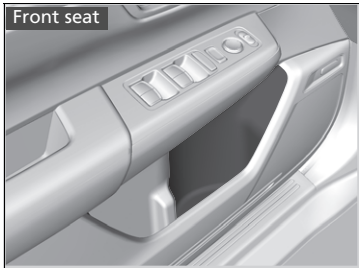
Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

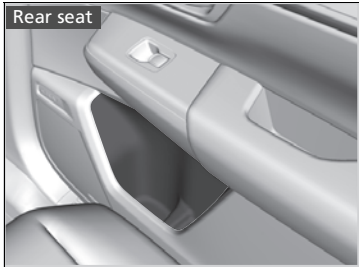
Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.





■ **Door beverage holders**

Located on both of front and rear door side pockets.

Continued

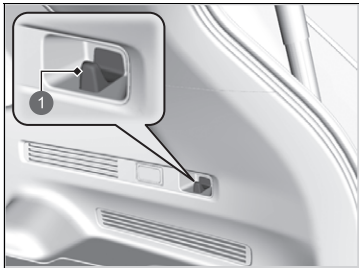
■ Coat Hook

There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle.

Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Cargo Hook



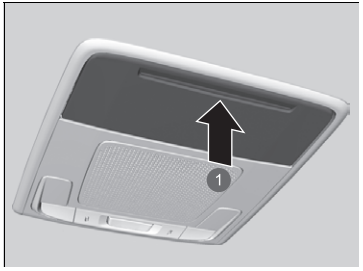
The cargo hook in the cargo area can be used to hang light items.

❶ Hook

Cargo Hook

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 6 lbs (3 kg) on the side cargo hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

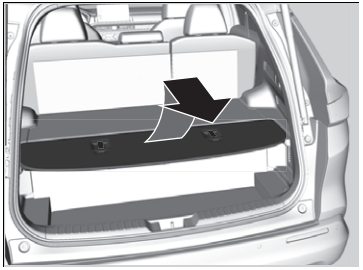
❶ Push

Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

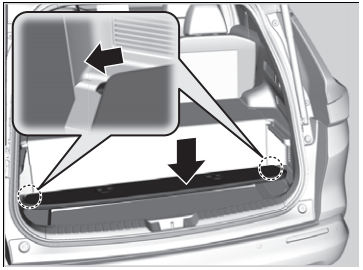
Continued

■ Flexible Board



■ Moving the flexible board to the lowered position

1. Lift up and pull out your side of the flexible board.



2. Insert the tip of the flexible board into the recess and lower your side.

Flexible Board

Make sure the flexible board is placed securely before driving.

Do not access parcels in the cargo area while driving. This may cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Be careful not to put any parts of your body such as your hands or feet between the flexible board and the cargo area when using the board.

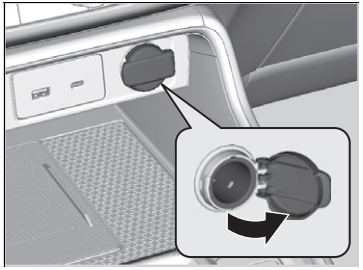
NOTICE

Do not place large objects or heavy objects that weigh more than 66 lbs on the flexible board while it is in the upper position. Placing heavy objects on it may damage the board.

Other Interior Convenience Items

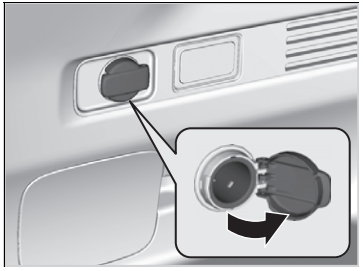
■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.



■ Cargo area

Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Sockets

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

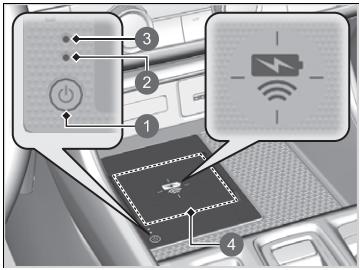
To prevent the 12-volt battery drain, use the accessory power socket only when the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

Continued

■ Wireless Charger

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



❶ ⏻ (Power) Button
❷ Green Indicator
❸ Amber Indicator
❹ Charging Area

1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the ⏻ (power) button.
▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
▶ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system and placed with the chargeable side in the center of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger

RF Radiation Exposure Statement:
This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

In order to use safely:
- Remove any metal objects from the charge pad before charging a device.
- Do not open the charger case.
- Do not use the charger if it malfunctions. Contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

If the charger interferes with radio communications, attempt to correct the interference:
- Press and hold the switch on the charger for a few seconds to turn off the charger.

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simulta-neously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the center of the charging area where is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for repairs.

Continued

Wireless Charger

⚠CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (e.g., water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine, or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

Wireless Charger

The wireless charger can support up to 15 W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging.
The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or gas station.
- The device has a cover, case, or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Wireless Charger

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All the doors and the tailgate are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

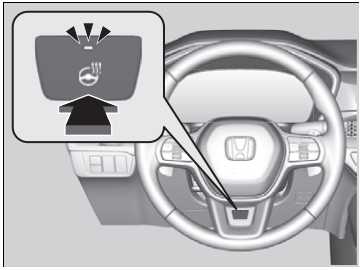
Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge.
The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

Continued

■ Heated Steering Wheel



The heated steering wheel can be used when the power mode is in ON.

Press the button on the lower side of the steering wheel.

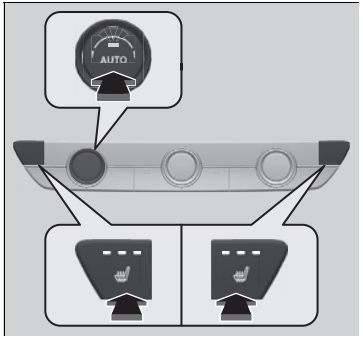
When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you activate the power system, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Heated Steering Wheel

Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

Front Seat Heaters



The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.

Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

Press the AUTO button:
Both the air conditioner and seat temperature will automatically change to the setting most suitable to the ambient environment.

▶ When the seat heater button is pressed, settings will switch to manual mode.

Front Seat Heaters

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lowerlimb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the front seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the front seat heaters shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

As time passes, the set temperature will fall, and eventually the seat heater will shut off.

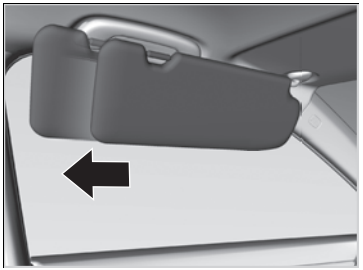
The seat heater may turn on if sensors detect weight on the passenger seat due to cargo, etc.

To prevent automatic activation, you can turn off automatic climate control for the front seat.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

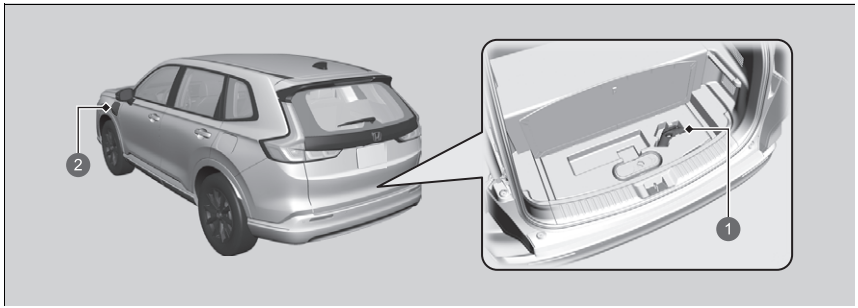
Continued

■ Sun Visor



The sun visor can be extended horizontally.

Power Supply Connector



❶ Power Supply Connector
❷ Charge Lid

You can power supply your electronic devices using the vehicle's power supply. Confirm the following points before using the power supply connector.

- Is the power supply connector damaged in any way?
  ▶ If it is damaged, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
- Are there any contamination or foreign objects in the power supply connector or bidirectional charging inlet?
  ▶ If there are any contamination or foreign objects inside, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
  ▶ Make sure to keep the power supply connector and bidirectional charging inlet as clean as possible.
- Is the power supply connector wet?
  ▶ Do not use this device with wet hands. If the power supply connector gets wet, do not use it until it is sufficiently dry.

Continued

Power Supply Connector

⚠WARNING

Never use the Power Supply Connector in an enclosed area that has limited ventilation as there is a risk of oxygen deprivation.

Failure to follow the directions below can cause electrical shock and fire, which can result in serious injury or death.

- Do not power supply when there is a risk of lightning strikes
- Do not use this device if its connector, electrical outlet, or the electrical device to be connected are wet.
- Do not use this device with wet hands
- Do not modify or disassemble the power supply connector
- Do not use the power supply connector if it is damaged or malfunctioning

Do not let others operate this device without proper guidance. Do not let children operate this device.

Supplies AC 120 V of power to electronic devices that consume less than 1,500 W (12.5 A).

Power Supply Connector

Power supply may be automatically suspended depending on the vehicle's condition.

When using an electronic device with a grounding wire, connect it to the grounding outlet on a retail conversion adapter.

Even if less than 1,500 W (12.5 A) is needed, the following electronic devices may not operate correctly.

- Devices that use a lot of power when starting up.
- Measuring instruments for precise data processing.
- Devices requiring a very stable power output.
- Devices with programed features or set timers that require being plugged in continuously.

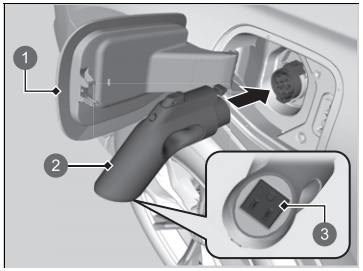
This feature cannot be used if:

- Hydrogen fuel is running low.
- The vehicle's interior is very hot or cold.

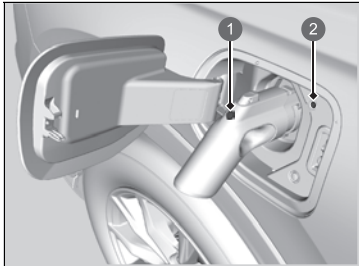
Some electronic devices may cause interference for radios and televisions.

If the power supply connector is dirty or otherwise contaminated, carefully clean it with a dry clean cloth before use. Do not attempt to clean it with water or chemicals.

The power supply connector was designed to be used with this vehicle.



❶ Charge Lid
❷ Power Supply Connector
❸ Power Outlet



❶ Start Power Supply Button
❷ Indicator

■ Supplying Power

1. Put the transmission into P and press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.
2. Open the charge lid.
► To open the charge lid, refer to the following page.
➡ **How to Charge** P. 544
3. Insert the electronic device into the power outlet.
4. Align and insert the power supply connector into the bidirectional charging inlet.
5. On the power supply connector, press the start power supply button twice in quick succession. The vehicle indicator will change from blinking slowly (in white) to a light sweep (in blue).
6. Turn on the electronic device's power.
7. Press the **Power** button to turn off the vehicle.
8. Close and lock the door.

Supplying Power

NOTICE

Power output limit can be set.
➡ **Power Output Limit Settings** P. 322

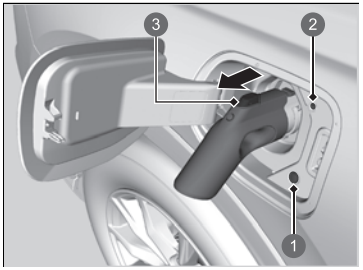
The power supply connector can also be used when the vehicle's power mode is turned on. In this case, the power mode will not switch to OFF even if the power supply is automatically suspended.
To prevent the 12-volt battery fully discharging, turn off the vehicle's power system immediately when the connector's power supply is automatically suspended for any of the following reasons.
- The vehicle is running low on hydrogen fuel.
- The power consumption exceeds the power that can be supplied.
- There is a connection or system error.
- There is a risk of short-circuiting.

Do not leave your vehicle unattended while using the power supply connector.

Do not connect multiple electronic devices at the same time.

When using a device with a cord reel, make sure the cord is fully extended before use.

Continued



❶ Unlock Button
❷ Indicator
❸ Lock Release Button

■ Canceling power supply

1. Turn off the electronic device's power.
2. While carrying the keyless remote, press the unlock button. The vehicle indicator will change from slowly blinking (in white) for a while to staying on (in white).
3. Press the lock release button on the power supply connector to disengage it.
4. Unplug your electronic device from the power outlet.
5. Close the charge lid.

Canceling power supply

NOTICE

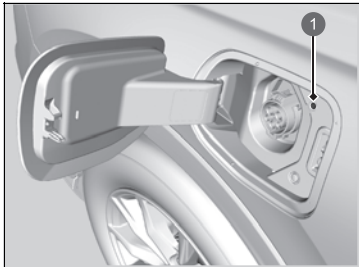
If the power supply connector cannot be removed due to ice forming around it in conditions such as low temperatures, apply warm water with a temperature of less than 104°F (40°C) to it to melt the ice. After sufficiently removing the water, disengage the connector.
There is a risk of damage or malfunction after applying de-icing agents or hot liquid.
Before re-connecting the power supply connector, make sure that it is sufficiently dry and that neither it nor the bidirectional charging inlet are wet.

To prevent the 12-volt battery from running out, set the power mode to OFF immediately after power supplying is finished.

If the power supply connector does not disengage, do not disengage it forcefully, and follow the procedures mentioned in the following page.

If You Cannot Disengage the Charging/ Power Supply Connector P. 661

■ **Indicator on the Vehicle Side**



❶ Indicator

Shows the power supply connector supplying status.

Indicators status	Explanation
Blinks slowly (white)	• The power supply connector is ready to supply power.
Sweep (blue)	• The power supply is being supplied.
Blinks (red)	• There is a problem with the power supply connector. ▶ Power supplying does not start.
Stays on (red)	• The power supply connector is not inserted correctly. ▶ When connecting the power supply connector to the vehicle, insert the connector until it hits the back so that it does not tilt.
Stays on (white)	• The unlock button is pressed. • Power supplying has been automatically canceled due to the external power output H2 limit settings. • The power supply connector has been successfully disengaged.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.

3. Press the (**ON**/**OFF**) button to cancel.

Using Automatic Climate Control

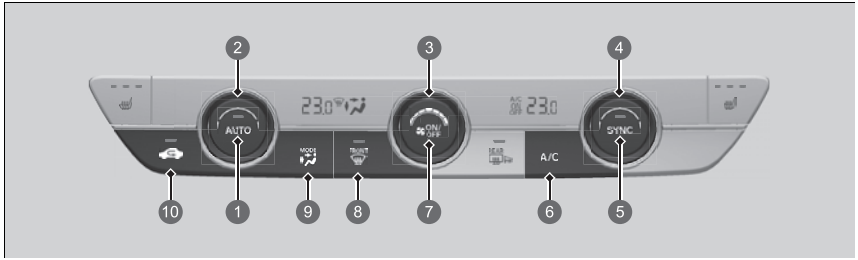
If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The auto button indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.



❶ **AUTO** Button
❷ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
❸ Fan Control Dial
❹ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
❺ **SYNC** Button
❻ **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button
❼ (**ON/OFF**) Button
❽ (Windshield Defroster) Button
❾ **MODE** Button
- Dashboard vents and back of the console compartment
- Dashboard and floor vents, and back of the console compartment
- Floor vents
- Floor and windshield defroster vents

❿ (Recirculation) Button

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Using Automatic Climate Control

Pressing the button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

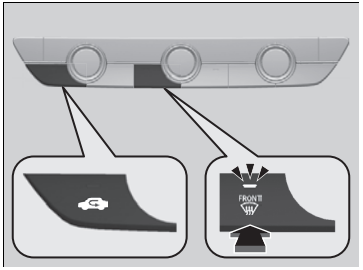
While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

For directions on the proper handling of the front seat heaters, refer to the following page.

➡ **Front Seat Heaters** P. 225

Continued

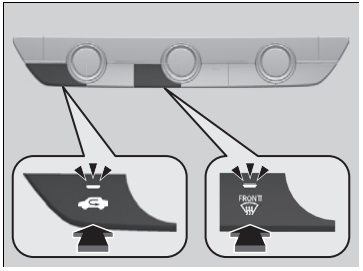
■ Defrosting the Windshield and Windows



Pressing the FRONT (windshield defroster) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, and the system returns to the previous settings.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the button.

Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

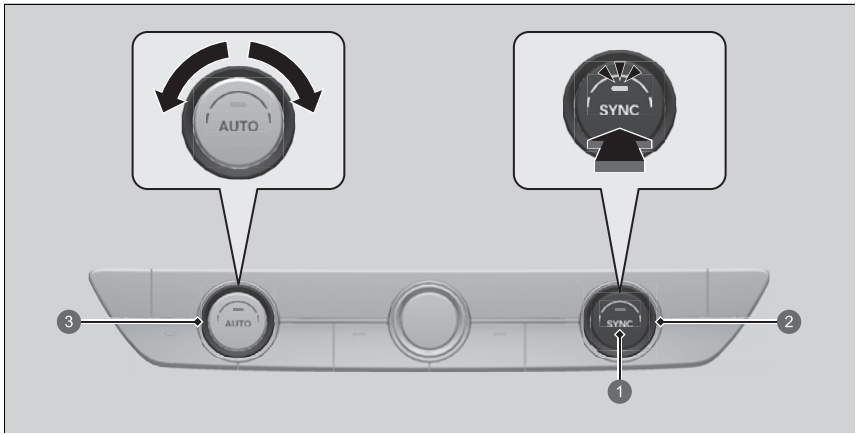
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

■ Synchronization Mode



❶ **SYNC** Button
❷ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
❸ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control dial to return to dual mode.

Continued

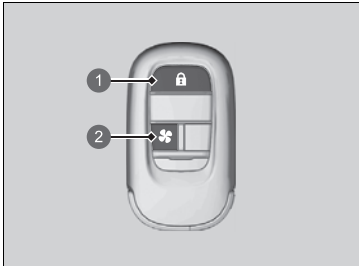
Synchronization Mode

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

■ Turning the Climate Control System On and Off with the Remote

You can operate the climate control system from outside the vehicle.



❶ Lock Button
❷ Climate Button

■ To turn on the system

1. Press the lock button.
▶ Some exterior lights flash.
2. Within about five seconds, press and hold the climate button.
▶ Some exterior lights flash.
▶ After a few seconds, some exterior lights flash six times and the climate control system is turned on.

■ To turn off the system

Press and hold the climate button.
▶ Some exterior lights flash and the climate control system is turned off.

Turning the Climate Control System On and Off with the Remote

⚠WARNING

Make sure that no one is inside the vehicle when you use the remote climate control system. After a certain period of time has elapsed, the system shuts off temporarily. During this time, the interior of the vehicle may heat up or cool down depending on ambient temperatures. If a child is left inside the vehicle, extreme temperature exposure can result in death or serious injury of the child.

The climate control system may not operate by the remote climate pre-conditioning if:
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than P.
- The hood is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to operate the remote climate pre-conditioning.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The telematics unit malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The battery level is low.

Turning the Climate Control System On and Off with the Remote

The climate control system may stop while it is operating if:

- You do not start the vehicle within 10 minutes of turning the power system on with the keyless remote. (This can be extended by another 10 minutes by operating the keyless remote again.)
- The climate control system is stopped by using the keyless remote.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The hood or any door is open, or the tailgate is unlocked.
- The transmission is in a position other than P.
- The battery level is low.

Continued

Turning the Climate Control System On and Off with the Remote

The following functions also operate according to the temperature:

When it is warm outside:

- The air conditioning is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The windshield defroster is activated as necessary when automatic defrosting is selected.
- The rear defogger and heated door mirror are activated.
- The heated steering wheel is activated.
  ➡ **Heated Steering Wheel** P. 224
- The front seat heater is activated.
  ➡ **Front Seat Heaters** P. 225

Depending on the charging environment, the charge amount of High Voltage battery may be reduce even if the charging connector is plugged in.

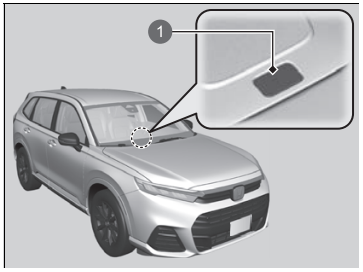
You can adjust the pre-conditioning temperature, change the operation time, and turn off the automatic defroster by using the audio/information screen.

➡ **Vehicle Charging and Schedule Settings** P. 319

You can customize the settings of the climate control system schedule.

➡ **Vehicle Charging and Schedule Settings** P. 319

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

❶ Sensor

❶ Sensor

This page intentionally left blank.

Features

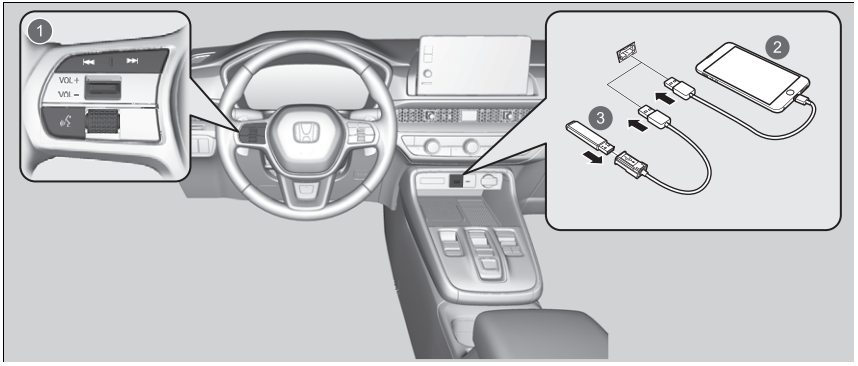
This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System..... 242
9-in. Color Touchscreen..... 244
Audio Error Messages..... 362
General Information on the Audio System..... 364

About Your Audio System

The audio system features FM radio and SiriusXM® Radio service. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod®, iPhone®, smartphone, and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knob on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface.



1 Remote Controls
2 Device
3 USB Flash Drive

About Your Audio System

SiriusXM® Radio is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

General Information on the Audio System
P. 364

SiriusXM® Radio is available in the United States.

SiriusXM® is a registered trademark of SiriusXM Radio, Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

Audio System Theft Protection

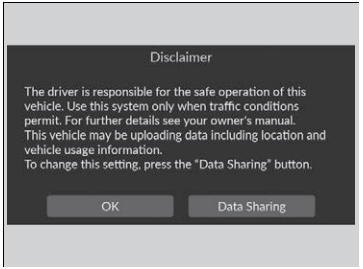
The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the **VOL/ ⏻ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) knob for more than two seconds.
▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer and have the audio unit checked.

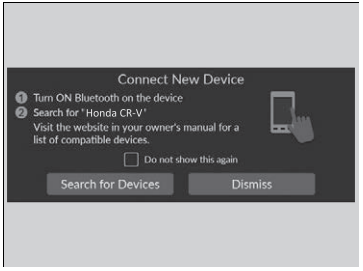
Start Up

The 9-in. Color Touchscreen starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the data upload will be displayed.



Select **OK**.

- ▶ If you want to change the settings for data upload, select **Data Sharing**, then select the ON/OFF settings on the **Data Sharing Setting** screen.
- ▶ If you do not select **OK**, the system will automatically be switched the home screen after a certain period of time.
- ▶ If there is no registered device, select **OK** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.



■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
2. Select Vehicle Name from your phone.
   - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this 9-in. Color Touchscreen, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
   - ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

Start Up

Data Sharing Setting
ON: Data communication available.
OFF: Data communication unavailable.

Basic Operation

■ Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.

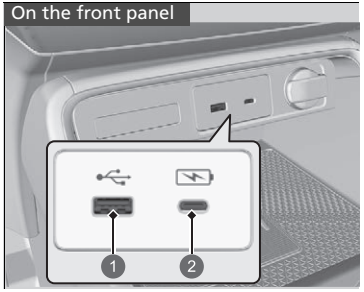
❶ **All Apps**
❷ Status Icons
❸ App Shortcut Icons
❹ Arrow
❺ **Display Mode** Icon
❻ Mode Change Switch Icons
❼ ◀◀ / ▶▶ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❽ **VOL**/ ⏻ **AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
❾ BACK (Back) Button
❿ HOME (Home) Button

Continued

All Apps: Displays all apps.
Status Icons: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area.
App Shortcut Icons: Display the app shortcut icons.
Arrow: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.
Display Mode Icon: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select once and select or to make an adjustment.
Mode Change Switch Icons: Display icons to change the mode directly.
/ (Seek/Skip) **Buttons**: Press to change station, song or file.
VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.
(Back) Button: Presses to go to back to the previous screen.
(Home) Button: Presses to go to the home screen.

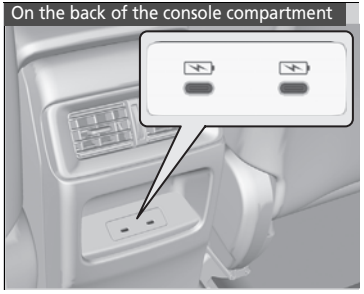
■ USB Ports

On the front panel



❶ Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones
❷ Only for charging devices

On the back of the console compartment



■ USB charging/connector port ( )

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay® or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning® Connector for Apple CarPlay. For Android Auto, USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

■ USB charging port ( )

The USB port (3.0A) is only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.

USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

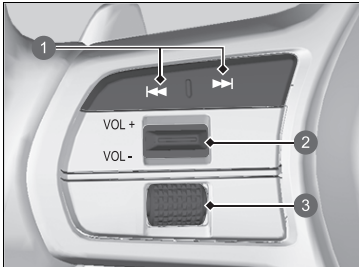
USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A/3.0A of power. It does not output 2.5A/3.0A unless requested by the device.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise to the radio station you are listening to.

Continued

■ Audio Remote Controls



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

❶ |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **VOL +/VOL −** (Volume) Switch
❸ Left Selector Wheel

VOL +/VOL − (Volume) Switch
Press Up: To increase the volume.
Press Down: To decrease the volume.

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Left Selector Wheel

Roll up or down:

To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

Back/Phone/FM/SXM/USB/Bluetooth/Apps (Apple CarPlay/Android Auto)/Customize display

▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press |▶▶|: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press |◀◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  Press |▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press |◀◀: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To go back to the previous folder.

Voice Control Operation

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.
The voice control system uses the (talk) button on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

■ Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
  The system recognizes only certain commands.
  Available voice commands:
  ➡ **Voice Portal Screen** P. 251
- Close the windows.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

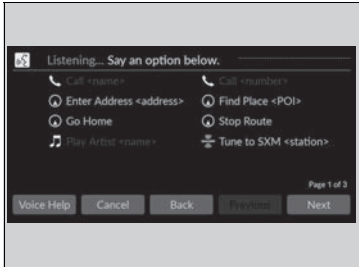
Voice Control Operation

When you press the button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

Voice Portal Screen



When the (talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.
For a complete list of commands, say *"Help"* after the beep.

Depending on the selected mode, the displayed commands are different on the voice portal screen. The commands recognized are the same regardless of which screen is selected.
Normal Mode: A list of example commands is displayed to quickly complete your desired function.
Assist Mode: A list of basic commands is displayed to guide you step by step through the voice menu.

You can change the mode on the **General Settings** screen.
Voice Control P. 333

The system only recognizes the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free-form voice commands are not recognized.

General Commands

When the voice portal screen is displayed, it will change to the top screen of each function by using the global commands.
- *Music Search*
- *FM*
- *Sirius XM*
- *Phone*
- *Navigation*

Phone Commands

When the system recognizes a phone command, the screen will change to the dedicated phone voice recognition screen. These commands can only be used when a phone is connected.

Phone Commands
- *Call <name>*
- *Call <number>*

The system only recognizes contact names stored in the phonebook of your phone. If a full name is registered in the first name field, the system will recognize the first name and last name as one contact name.

Phone commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

Audio Commands

When the system recognizes an audio command, the screen will change to the dedicated audio voice recognition screen.

FM Commands
- *Tune to <FM frequency>*

Sirius XM Commands
- *Tune to SXM <channel number>*
- *Tune to SXM <station name>*

■ **iPod Commands**
- *List Album <name>*
- *List Artist <name>*
- *List Genre <name>*
- *List Playlist <name>*
- *Play <artist> <album>*
- *Play*
- *Play Album <name>*
- *Play Artist <name>*
- *Play Genre <name>*
- *Play Music <text:media_combo>*
- *Play Playlist <name>*
- *Play Song <name>*

■ **USB Commands**
- *List Album <name>*
- *List Artist <name>*
- *List Playlist <name>*
- *Play <artist> <album>*
- *Play*
- *Play Album <name>*
- *Play Artist <name>*
- *Play Music <text:media_combo>*
- *Play Playlist <name>*
- *Play Song <name>*

■ Navigation Commands

The screen changes to the navigation screen.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

■ Standard Commands

- *Voice Help*
- *Cancel*
- *Back*

Voice Help provides guidance for the current screen.

■ List Commands

- *Previous*
- *Next*
- *Yes*
- *No*

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Audio/Information Screen

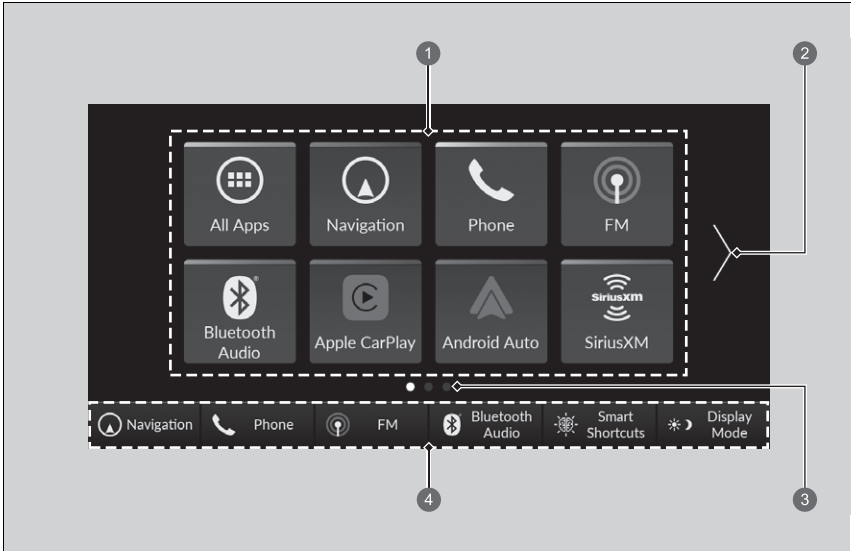
Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.
Customized Features P. 326

Continued

■ App Shortcut Function



❶ App Shortcut Icons
❷ Arrow
❸ Page Indicator
❹ Mode Change Switches

■ To move to the next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

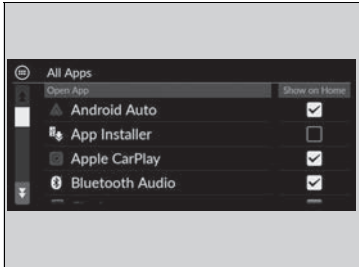
App Shortcut Function

The home screen can contain up to 6 pages.

Press the HOME button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select the box checked on the desired apps.

Continued

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change icon locations on the home screen.

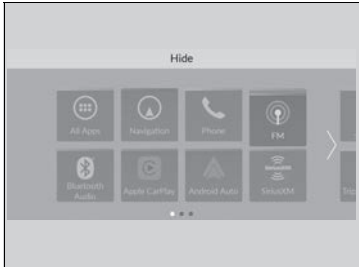
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

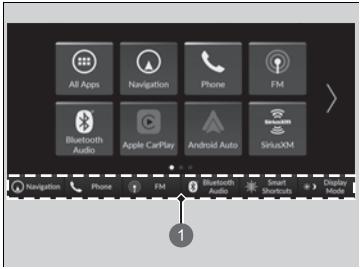
Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to six icons on the bottom of the home screen.



1 Mode Change Switches

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.
   ▶ The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

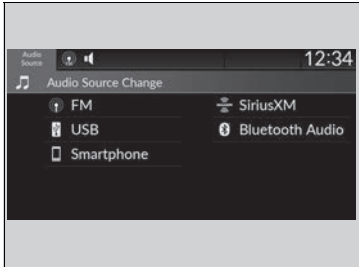
■ Status Area

Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.

1. Select the system status icon.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the BACK button or select the system status icon to close the area.

❶ System Status Icon

■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select **Audio Source** in the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

Continued

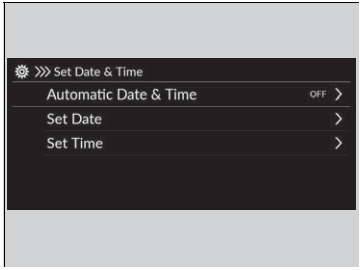
■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:
7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:
7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the time.

Adjusting the Clock

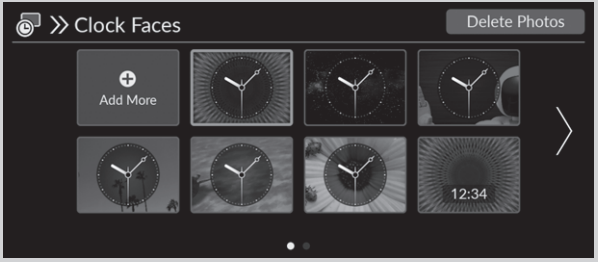
The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.
1. Touch the clock on the screen.
   The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours, and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customize the clock display.
➡ **System** P. 327

Continued

■ Clock Wallpaper Setup



■ Import clock wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
USB Ports P. 247
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Clock Faces**.
6. Select **Add More**.
▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive is displayed on the list.
7. Select a desired picture to import.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
8. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
9. Select **Transfer**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

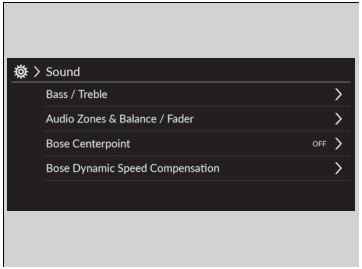
■ **Select clock wallpaper**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select a desired picture to set.
▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
6. Select **Save**.
▶ The clock screen with which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ **Delete clock wallpaper**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Delete Photos**.
6. Select a desired picture to delete.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
7. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
8. Select **Delete**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select an audio source icon.
3. Select **Sound**.

Select an item from the following choices:
- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader:** Driver Only, Front Only, Rear Only, Full Vehicle, Balance, Fader
- **Bose Centerpoint:** Turns the Bose Centerpoint ON and OFF.
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation:** Sets the amount of volume increase.

Adjusting the Sound

The **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation** adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

Audio Zones & Balance / Fader
You can change where the sound comes from by selecting one of the speaker options below:
- **Full Vehicle:** All the speakers emit sound.
- **Driver Only:** Only the speaker by the driver's seat emits sound.
- **Front Only:** Only the front speakers emit sound.
- **Rear Only:** Only the rear speakers emit sound.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**, and **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**, select **Default** on each setting screen.

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness.

■ Switching Display Mode Manually

Select **Display Mode**.

▶ The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.

▶ Select ☀ or ☀ to adjust the brightness.

▶ Select **Display OFF** to turn off the screen. To turn on the screen, press the HOME or BACK button.

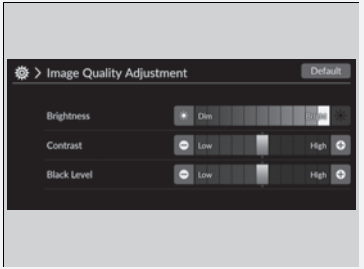
Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by sliding or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.



System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, with a USB device, or with the telematics control unit (TCU) through the subscription-based service.

■ How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

▶ The system will check for updates.

▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

Status Area P. 259

3. Select **Download**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if user acceptance is needed for download.

4. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that requires login or agreement to the terms of use on the browser.

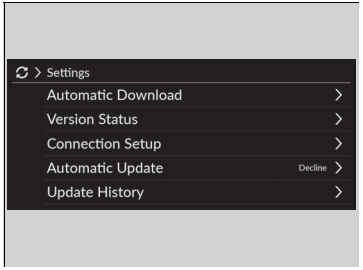
Your download will be canceled if:

- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You turn off the power system when the 12-volt battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

■ System Updates Settings



The following settings can be set.

- **Automatic Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
- **Automatic Update**
- **Update History**

■ Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Automatic Download**.

5. Select the access point, then select **Enable**.

▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Disable**.

■ View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Version Status**.

Continued

■ **Connection setup**

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
8. Select **Connect**.

■ **Automatic update settings**

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic update setting.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Automatic Update**.
5. Select **Accept**.
▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Decline**.

■ **View the update history**

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Update History**.

Continued

■ How to Update Wirelessly

■ Wireless connection mode setup

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
8. Select **Connect**.

■ How to update

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **via Wireless**.
4. Select **Download**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if user acceptance is needed for download.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

Download the update files from the server

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
   ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
   USB Ports P. 247
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
   ▶ Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to *https://usb.honda.com* for instructions.

Update the audio system

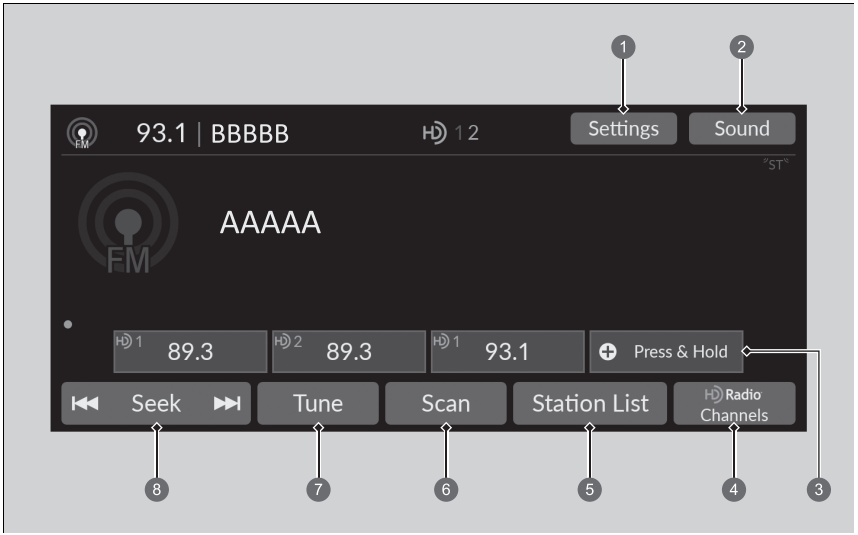
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
   USB Ports P. 247
6. Select **Install Now**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

A USB device with a minimum of 8 GB of free space or more is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

Playing FM Radio



1. **Settings Icon**
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Preset Icons**
4. **HD Subchannel Icon**
5. **Station List Icon**
6. **Scan Icon**
7. **Tune Icon**
8. **Seek Icons**

■ Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can set a new preset station.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or press the BACK button.

■ Seek

Selects |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Preset Memory

The ST indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 248

You can store 12 FM stations into preset memory.

Continued

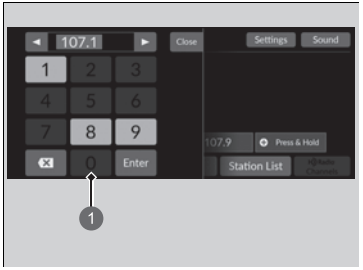
■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 264

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Allows use of the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

1 On-screen Keyboard

■ HD Subchannel

Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected while listening to an FM station.

1. Select HD Radio **Channels**.
2. Select the channel number.

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

◀/▶ icons:
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Settings

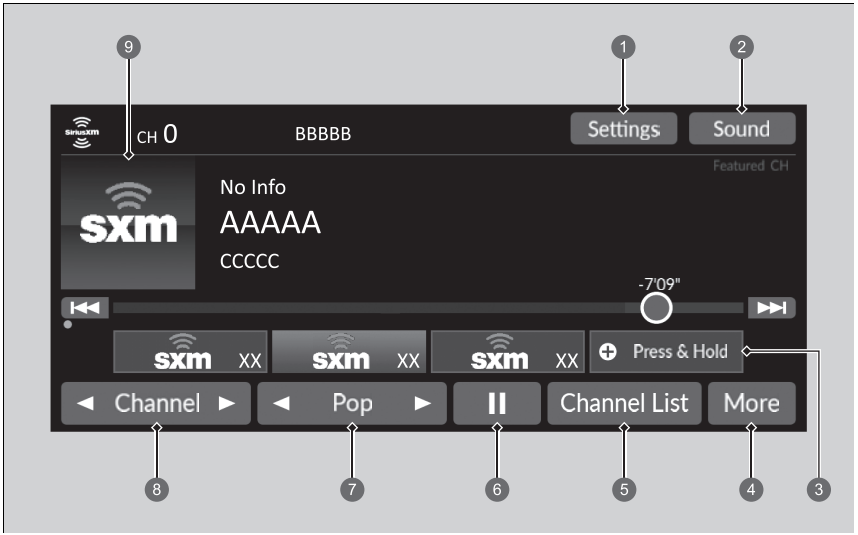
Change the FM settings.
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select an option.

- **HD Radio:** Automatically choose a digital or an analog channel, or listen to analog only.
- **Artwork:** Turns the artwork display on and off.

Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio



❶ **Settings Icon**
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Preset Icons**
❹ **More Icon**
❺ **Channel List Icon**
❻ **Play/Pause Icon**
❼ **Category Icons**
❽ **Channel Icons**
❾ **Album Art**

To Change the Tune Mode

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Tune Mode**.
3. Select **Channel** or **Category**.

Channel

Select ◀ or ▶ to the previous or next channel.
Select and hold to rapidly skip 10 channels at a time.

Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 264

Playing SiriusXM® Radio

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

SiriusXM® Radio stations load in ascending order, which can take about a minute. Once they have loaded you will be able to scroll up or down to make your selections.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll the left selector wheel or select **Audio Source** on the screen.

➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 248

Tune Start:
When you change to a preset channel, a song being played on that channel restarts from the beginning with this function. This can be turned on or off by the following procedure.
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Tune Start**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

To change a category, select **Category** icons, or select **More** and then select **Category List**.

Continued

■ Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.
To store a channel:
1. Tune to the selected channel.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that channel.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can set a new preset channel.

■ Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

You can store up to 10 of your preferred music channels per preset.

1. Tune a station.
2. Select and hold the preset number you want to add a music channel.
3. Select **Add to TuneMix** or **Create TuneMix**.
▶ A message appears if there are no available presets.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio

You can store 12 SiriusXM® channels into the preset memory.

Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

TuneMix™ is a registered trademark of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

TuneMix:
The multi-channel preset function can be turned on or off by the following procedure.
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **TuneMix**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

When you want to replace the channel, select **Replace Preset**.
If you want to delete a channel, select **Edit TuneMix**, and then select the channel you want to delete.

■ Listening to Featured Channels

Suggested channel listing received from SiriusXM® can be displayed and selected.

1. Select **More**.
2. Select **Category List**.
3. Select **Featured Favorites**.
4. Select the featured favorite list title you want to listen to.
▶ The selected channel list of the title is displayed.
5. Select the channel.

Listening to Featured Channels

Up to 10 featured channels by SiriusXM® can be displayed.

To switch the sorting method, select **Number** or **Name** on the upper right of the screen.

Select **Keypad** to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the channel number directly.

Continued

■ Replay Function

The system can record up to the last 60 minutes of your currently tuned channel's broadcast, as well as the last 30 minutes of your preset channel's broadcast, starting from the moment you turn the vehicle on. If you tuned to a preset channel, the system records up to 60 minutes of a broadcast instead of up to 30 minutes. You can rewind and replay the last 30 or 60 minutes of a broadcast.

Move the position you want to replay by selecting |◀◀| or |▶▶|.

To play or pause on playback mode, select the play/pause icon.

■ Returning to real-time broadcast

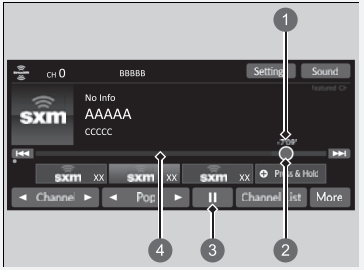
Select and hold |▶▶|.

Replay Function

The system starts storing a broadcast in memory when the power mode is turned ON. You can go back to the program from that point.

You can no longer replay any program once the power mode is turned off as it erases memory. You can check how long the program has been stored in memory from the audio/information screen.

After 30 or 60 minutes of recording the system will automatically start deleting the oldest data.



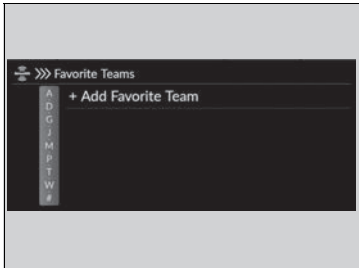
❶ Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast
❷ Replayed segment
❸ Play/Pause icon
❹ Length stored in memory

When you listen to a multi-channel preset while at the playback mode, the replayed segment is not displayed.

■ Live Sports Alert

While listening to other channels, you can receive sports alerts such as scores from the games of your favorite teams.

■ To set up a favorite team



1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Sports Notifications Setup**.
3. Select **Favorite Teams**.
4. Select **+ Add Favorite Team**.
5. Select a team.

■ To set up an alert message

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Sports Notifications Setup**.
3. Select **Notifications**.
4. Select **Game Notifications** or **SportsFlash Game Play Notifications**.
5. Select **Notifications**.
6. Select **ON**.
7. Select a favorite team.

■ Receiving a sports alert

1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a sports alert.
2. Select **Listen**.
▶ You can use the same items as the playback mode pop-up screen.
Replay Function P. 280
To go back to the previous screen, select ⊗.

Live Sports Alert

The Pop-up appears and notifies you of a sports alert function.

Continued

■ Traffic and Weather Information

You can receive traffic and weather information.

■ To set up traffic & weather information

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Traffic & Weather Now Setup**.
3. Select **Selected City:**
4. Select the region.
▶ When you do not want to receive the information, select **No Market Selected**.

■ Listening to traffic and weather information

1. Select the status icon.
2. Select the traffic and weather information.
▶ Play mode can also use any items the same as playback mode.
Replay Function P. 280
To go back to the previous screen, select ⊗.

Traffic and Weather Information

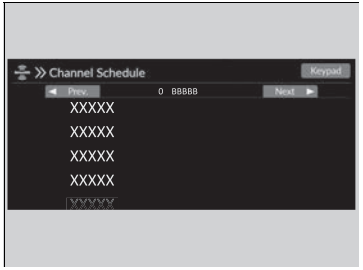
When traffic and weather information is received, a notification is displayed in the header area.
Status Area P. 259

Traffic & Weather Now are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

■ Channel Schedule

You can view a channel schedule or receive an alert when your favorite program is about to start.

■ To view a channel schedule



1. Select **More**.
2. Select **Channel Schedule**.

■ To set up an alert message

1. Select **More**.
2. Select **Channel Schedule**.
3. Select a program.
4. Select **Set Program Alert**.
5. Select **Just Once** or **Every Time**.

Channel Schedule

Select **Keypad** to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the channel number directly.

To set up an alert message

The Pop-up appears and notifies you of an alert function.

Selecting **Just Once** disables the alert feature next time you turn the power mode to ON.

If you want to delete the alert, select **Remove Alert**.

To enable an alert message, change settings for the alert function.

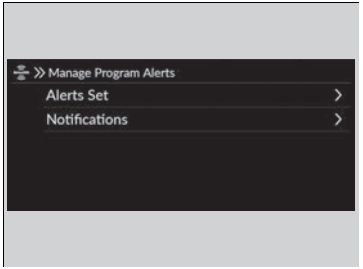
To enable the alert function P. 284

Continued

■ Manage Program Alert

You can change settings for the alert function.

■ To enable the alert function



1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Manage Program Alerts**.
3. Select **Notifications**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

■ To remove an alert

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Manage Program Alerts**.
3. Select **Alerts Set**.
4. Select ⊗ on the alert you want to delete.

Scan

Sample each channel on the selected mode for 10 seconds.

1. Select **More**.
2. Select **Scan**.

You can change a scan mode by the following procedure.

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Scan Mode**.
3. Select **Channel** or **Preset**.

To turn off scan, select **Stop**.

Scan

The "Scan Songs in Presets" function is based on TuneScan™ technology of SiriusXM®.

The "Featured Channels" function is based on Featured Favorites™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneScan™ and Featured Favorites™ are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

Continued

■ Settings

Change the SiriusXM® settings.

1. Select **Settings**.

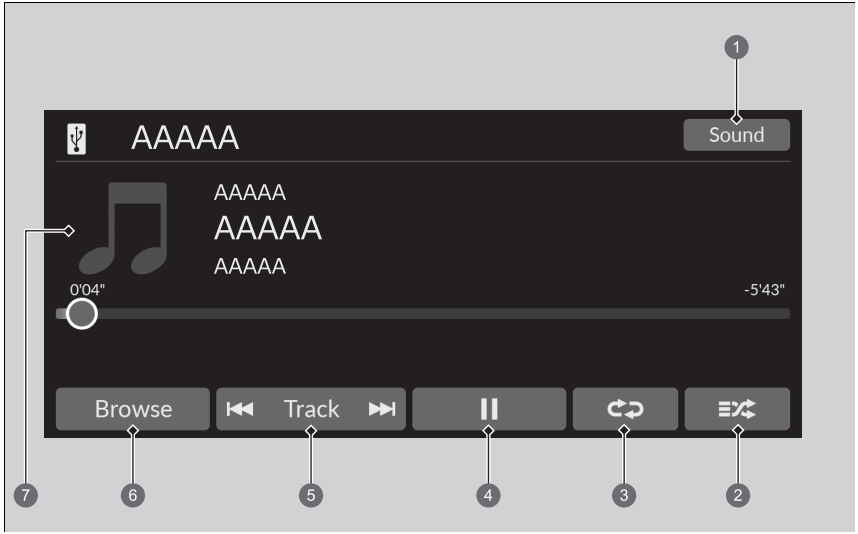
2. Select an option.

- **TuneMix:** Turns multiple channel mix preset on and off.
- **Tune Mode:** Choose whether to group by category or channel number when changing channels.
  ➡ **To Change the Tune Mode** P. 277
- **Scan Mode:** Select the scan mode from all channels or presets.
  ➡ **Scan** P. 285
- **Tune Start:** Start the currently playing song at the beginning when you switch to a music channel preset.
  ➡ **Tune Start:** P. 277
- **Sports Notifications Setup:** Set to receive sports alerts such as scores from your favorite teams.
  ➡ **Live Sports Alert** P. 281
- **Traffic & Weather Now Setup:** Set to receive traffic and weather information.
  ➡ **Traffic and Weather Information** P. 282
- **Manage Program Alerts:** Change settings for the alert function.
  ➡ **Manage Program Alert** P. 284

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Using your USB connector, connect the device to the USB charging/connector port, then select the USB icon.

USB Ports P. 247



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Music Playback via Wired Connection

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 362

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone or a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Continued

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select a search category.

3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats all songs.

■ How to Change a Song

You can select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

■ Sound

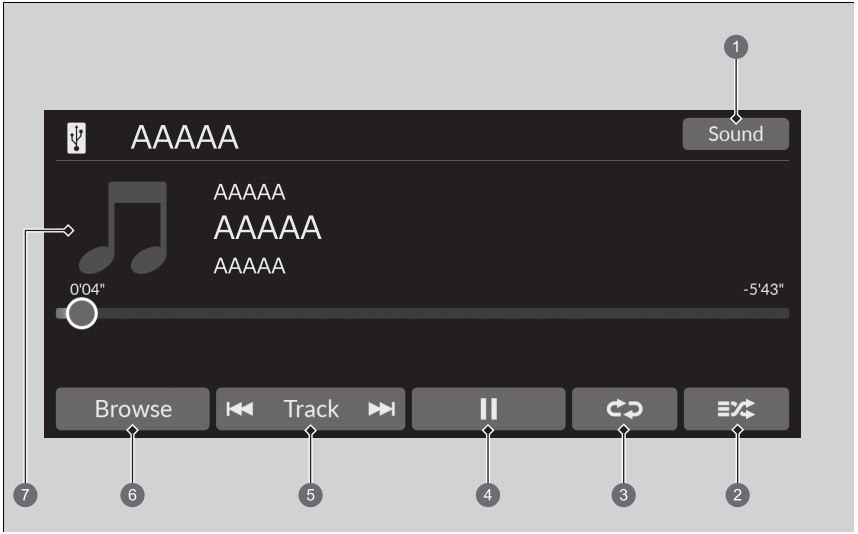
You can adjust the sound settings.

➲ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 264

Music Playback via USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive.
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port, then select the USB icon.

USB Ports P. 247



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Random Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Music Playback via USB Flash Drive

You can use the following formats to play sound files on a USB flash drive.
When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes® are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select a search category.

3. Continue making selections until you find the file of your choice.

Music Playback via USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

General Information on the Audio System P. 364

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 362

Continued

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

■ Random/Repeat

Repeatedly select the random or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

■ How to Change a File

Track Icons

You can select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

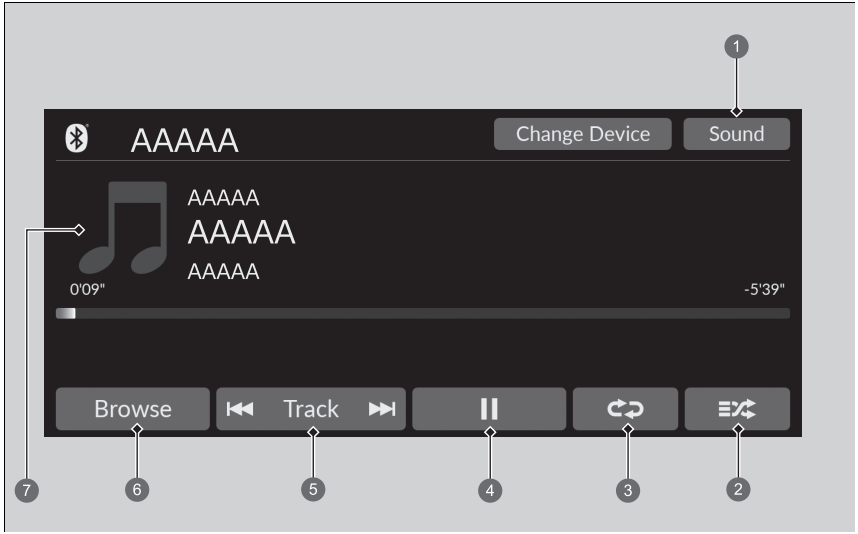
Adjusting the Sound P. 264

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*®-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

Phone Setup P. 350



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*®-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones:
Visit *https://mygarage.honda.com/s/honda-handsfreelink-compatibility-check*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth*® device list.

Phone Setup P. 350

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or file may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting ♫ from the *Bluetooth*® device list.

Phone Setup P. 350

Continued

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350

2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all files): Plays all available files in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat group): Repeats the current group.

(repeat all): Repeats all files.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350

■ Searching for Music

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.
➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 264

Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

HondaLink®

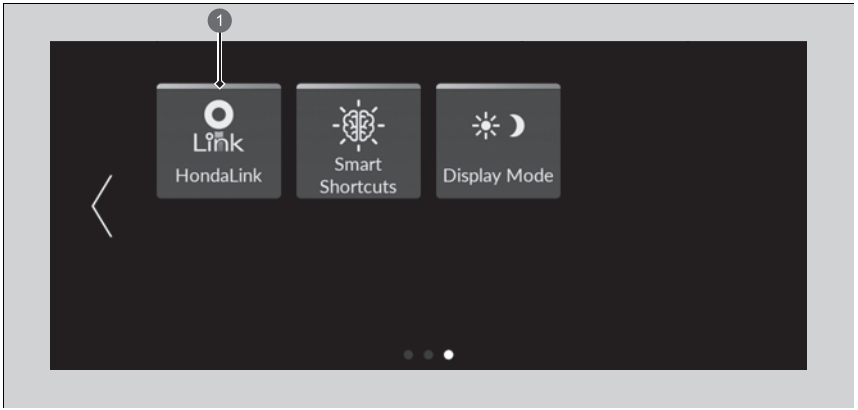
HondaLink® connects you to the latest information from Honda. You can connect your phone wirelessly through Wi-Fi or *Bluetooth*®.

Wi-Fi Connection P. 304

Phone Setup P. 350

In case of emergency or vehicle trouble, refer to the following.

In Case of Emergency or Vehicle Trouble P. 663



1 HondaLink

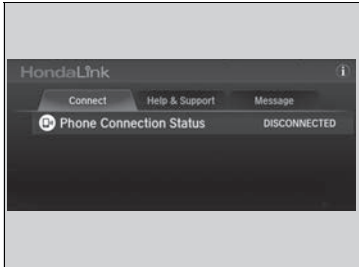
HondaLink®

The HondaLink® connect app is compatible with most iPhone and Android phones.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, HondaLink® can only be connected through Wi-Fi.

HondaLink® Menu



- **Connect**
  Displays the connection status of the vehicle.
- **Help & Support**
  Displays tips for vehicle usage, and gets support via roadside assistance or customer service center.
- **Message**
  Displays helpful and important information from Honda.

Continued

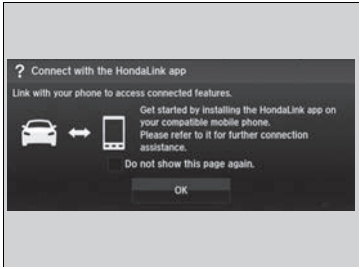
■ To Set Up to Connect HondaLink® Service

Use the following procedure to connect to HondaLink® service.

■ To enable the HondaLink® service

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Data Sharing Setting**.
5. Select **ON**.

■ To link with HondaLink®



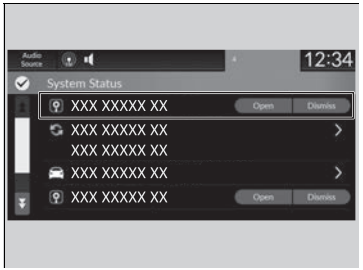
You can see the connection guide screen after launching HondaLink® when there is no connection to a network. If you do not need this guide, select the check-box and select **OK**.

■ Vehicle Information and Message from Honda Tips

You can check the messages that are received quickly in the shortcut operation.

1. A notification appears and notifies you of a new message in the header area.
2. A notification icon is continuously displayed in the header area until the new message is read.
3. Select the system status icon to see the messages.

❶ Notification



4. Select a new message to open.

Smart Shortcuts

By observing and learning driver behaviors, patterns, and preferences, the system anticipates driver actions and presents on-screen suggestions to help perform desired actions quicker and with fewer steps.

- The app will suggest actions based on what it learns you do often, and occasionally make recommendations based on your learned preferences.
- The system will take some time to learn. The more you interact with the system, the more suggestion you will see, and the more accurate they will become.
- Suggestions will automatically refresh periodically to provide updated content for each profile.
- You can also provide feedback on whether a suggestion is helpful by pressing and holding on it. This can help the app grow smarter over time.
- To change the notifications behavior for Smart Shortcuts:

1. Select **Options** on the **Smart Shortcuts** screen.
2. Select **Suggestion Settings**.
3. Select an option.

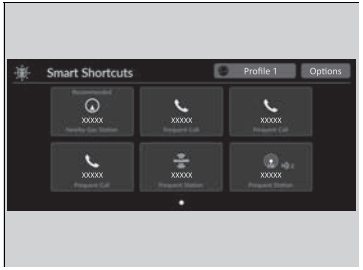
- All data used for Smart Shortcuts can be erased by a **Factory Data Reset**.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 342

Smart Shortcuts

The app also supports different profiles for each user, with customized learning for each profile. The app will also learn to associate a profile to a user over time based on key fob and connected phone data.

How to Use



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Smart Shortcuts**.
3. Select a shortcut to take the action suggested.

How to Use

You can change the profile by selecting on the top of the **Smart Shortcuts** screen.

You can customize the following items by selecting **Options** on the top of the **Smart Shortcuts** screen.
- **Profiles**: Create, change, and manage profiles.
- **View App Walkthrough**: View the Smart Shortcuts walkthrough.
- **Suggestion Settings**: Change where suggestions can appear.
- **License**: Shows the license information.

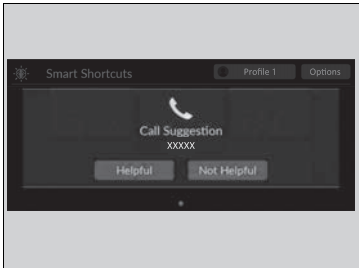
To create a profile:
1. Select **Options** on the **Smart Shortcuts** screen.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Manage Profiles**.
4. Select **+ Add New Profile**.
5. Enter name for your profile.
6. Select **Done**.

▶A new profile has been created and the Smart App will automatically switch to that profile.

To change a profile:
1. Select **Options** on the **Smart Shortcuts** screen.
2. Select **Profiles**.
3. Select **Change Current Profile**.
4. Select a profile from the list.

▶The change to the selected profile has been made.

Continued



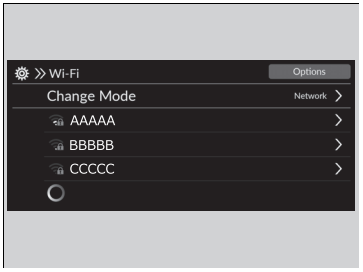
- **Call Suggestions:** When selected, a call to the contact or number suggested will be placed and shown. Based on your calling patterns, contacts will be suggested for you to call.
  ▶ Connect your smartphone through *Bluetooth*® to get contact suggestions.
  ▶ Call suggestions will not be displayed when you are connected to Apple CarPlay.
- **Radio Suggestions:** When selected, the corresponding radio app (FM or SiriusXM®) will open and it will start playing the station.
  ▶ From radio apps, you can receive:
  - FM, SiriusXM®: Most frequently listened-to stations you may like to play next.
  - FM, SiriusXM®: Genre-based suggestions.
  ▶ Considerations:
  - FM suggestions will appear only when they are within range, according to your vehicle's tuner signal.
  - SiriusXM® suggestions will be available as long as there is an active account in the vehicle.

- **Navigation Suggestions:** When selected, a route will be started to the suggested destination and the embedded navigation app will open.
  ▶ When a long route is set in your navigation system, you can receive recommendations for gas stations and places to stop at along the way.
  ▶ The places you frequently navigate to while using the embedded navigation system will be suggested as shortcuts.
  ▶ Save your home location in the embedded navigation app to have a shortcut suggestion for it when you're away from home.

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

■ Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select an access point from the network list.
▶ To connect to a hotspot that is not automatically detected, select **Options** then **Add Network**.
7. Enter the password.
▶ If you check the **Use this network to automatically download system updates** box, you can set the network to be used for system updates.
System Updates P. 266
8. Select **Connect**.

■ Turning off the Wi-Fi connection

1. Select **Change Mode**.
2. Select **OFF**.

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Connect the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

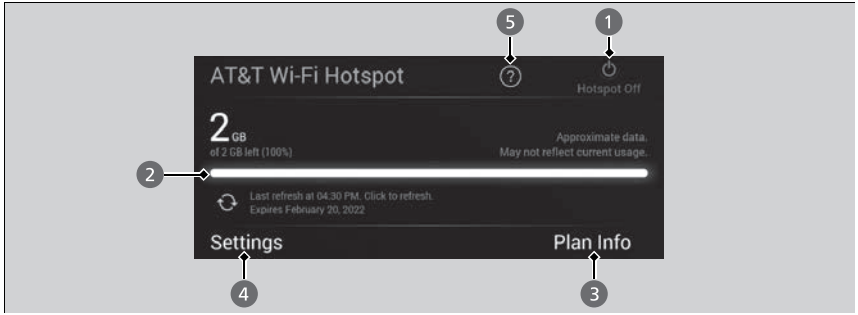
Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

AT&T Hotspot

If you have subscribed to AT&T hotspot services, your vehicle will provide data to connect your mobile devices to the Internet. You can use the AT&T Hotspot app to turn vehicle data on/off and monitor data usage left on your subscription.

■ AT&T Hotspot Menu



❶ Hotspot Enable
❷ Data Usage Bar
❸ **Plan Info**
❹ **Settings**
❺ Help

AT&T Hotspot

To use AT&T Hotspot services, your vehicle must be subscribed to a data plan. If your vehicle is not subscribed to a data plan, you can visit *www.att.com/honda* to add vehicle data services.

Hotspot username and password can be changed in the **Settings** of the AT&T Hotspot app. **Settings** cannot be accessed while driving. Park in a safe place to adjust Hotspot settings.

Alternatively, you can use your mobile hotspot to connect the vehicle and other mobile devices to the Internet.

Wi-Fi Connection P. 304

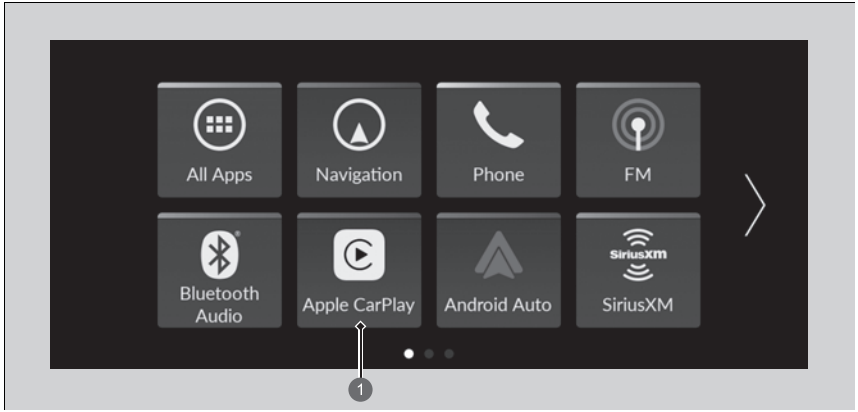
Continued

Hotspot Enable: Turn AT&T Hotspot on/off.
Data Usage Bar: Check the current status of your data plan. This Usage Bar will show your current plan and how much data remains on your plan. Subscription plans for AT&T Hotspot can be added/modified at *www.att.com/honda*.
Plan Info: Shows your current AT&T subscription plan for the vehicle.
Settings: Shows the current username and password for vehicle Hotspot. **Settings** can be changed while the vehicle is not in motion.
Help

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly and the **Apple CarPlay** icon is selected, you can use Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

USB Ports P. 247



1 Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

We recommend using the latest OS.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with HandsFreeLink, turn Apple CarPlay OFF.

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

Phone Setup P. 350

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple website.

Continued

■ Apple CarPlay Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Apple CarPlay website.
Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your iPhone.
Select the **Honda** icon on the Apple CarPlay menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple website for information on compatible apps.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB charging/connector port.
USB Ports P. 247
▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the home screen

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
3. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
4. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
Phone Setup P. 350
5. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.
6. Select **Yes** or **No**.

Apple CarPlay

Only initialize Apple CarPlay when you are safely parked.
When Apple CarPlay first detects your iPhone, you will need to set up your iPhone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your iPhone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Apple CarPlay:
Press the HOME button→Select General Settings→Smartphone Connection→Apple CarPlay→Select device.

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Continued

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the Apple CarPlay device list**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection**.
4. Select **Apple CarPlay**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350
7. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.
8. Select **Yes** or **No**.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly on the *Bluetooth*® device list**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350
7. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
8. Select **Connect**.
9. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.
10. Select **Yes** or **No**.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly with the steering wheel**

1. Press and hold the (talk) button on the steering wheel.

2. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350

3. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.

▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

4. Select **Connect**.

5. Select **Yes**.

▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.

6. Select **Yes** or **No**.

■ **Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.

2. Select **OK**.

▶ If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.

▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

3. Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350

4. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.

▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

5. Select **Connect**.

6. Select **Yes**.

▶ If your iPhone asks for permission to accept an Apple CarPlay connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.

7. Select **Yes** or **No**.

Continued

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri®

Press and hold the (talk) button to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri®

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

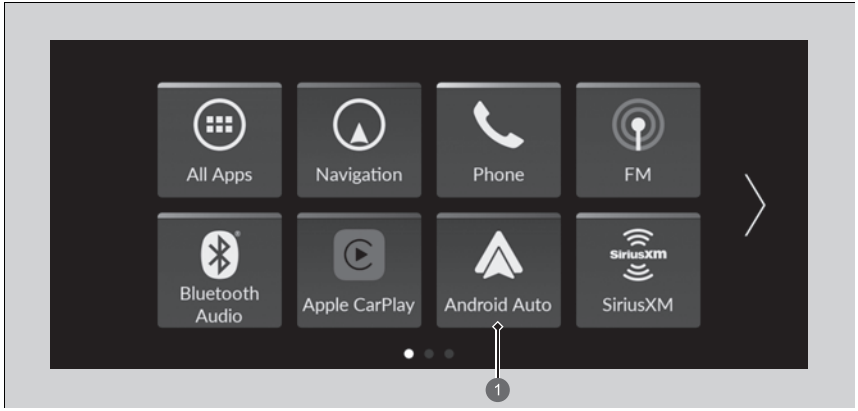
- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto™

When you connect an Android™ phone to the audio system via the USB port or wirelessly and the **Android Auto** icon is selected, you can use Android Auto on the audio/information screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

USB Ports P. 247



1 Android Auto

Android Auto™

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.
Bluetooth® A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

Phone Setup P. 350

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

Continued

■ Android Auto Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Android Auto website.
Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your smartphone.
Select the **Honda** icon on the Android Auto menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto website.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto website for information on compatible apps.

■ Connect Android Auto Using the USB Cable

1. Connect the Android phone to the USB charging/connector port.
USB Ports P. 247
▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
▶ If you do not want to connect Android Auto, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

■ Connect Android Auto Wirelessly

■ Connect Android Auto wirelessly on the home screen

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Android Auto**.
3. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
4. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
Phone Setup P. 350
5. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.
6. Select **Yes** or **No**.

Android Auto™

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the following procedure to disconnect or delete the devices connecting Android Auto after you have completed the initial setup:
Press the HOME button → Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device.

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.

Continued

■ **Connect Android Auto wirelessly on the Android Auto device list**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Smartphone Connection**.
4. Select **Android Auto**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
Phone Setup P. 350
7. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.

■ **Connect Android Auto wirelessly on the *Bluetooth*® device list**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **+ Connect New Device**.
6. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
Phone Setup P. 350
7. Check the box on **Android Auto**.
▶ If you select **Android Auto**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
8. Select **Connect**.
9. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.
10. Select **Yes** or **No**.

■ **Connect Android Auto wirelessly with the steering wheel**

1. Press and hold the (talk) button on the steering wheel.

2. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350

3. Check the box on **Android Auto**.
▶ If you select **Android Auto**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

4. Select **Connect**.

5. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.

6. Select **Yes** or **No**.

■ **Connect Android Auto wirelessly at start-up (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.

2. Select **OK**.
▶ If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

3. Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350

4. Check the box on **Android Auto**.
▶ If you select **Android Auto**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

5. Select **Connect**.

6. Select **Yes**.
▶ If your Android phone asks for permission to accept an Android Auto connection, accept to connect. A confirmation message for HondaLink Assist appears.

7. Select **Yes** or **No**.

Continued

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

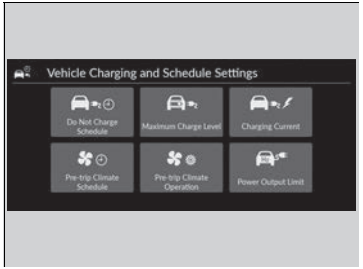
Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto website.

Vehicle Charging and Schedule Settings

There are several settings for the FCV mode on the **Vehicle Charging and Schedule Settings** screen. Select **Charge and Schedule** on the home screen.



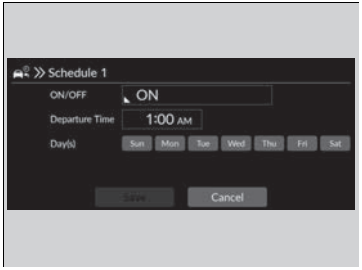
The following items can be set.

- Do Not Charge Schedule
  Using a Timer P. 553
- Maximum Charge Level
  Maximum Charge Setting P. 555
- Charging Current
  Charging Current Settings P. 556
- Pre-trip Climate Schedule
- Pre-trip Climate Operation
- Power Output Limit

Continued

■ Pre-trip Climate Schedule Setting

Pre-trip Climate Schedule causes the climate control system to operate in advance of the selected departure time in order to make the temperature inside the vehicle closer to your set temperature.
You can set up to 7 different schedules.



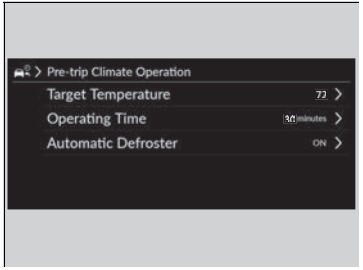
1. Select **ON**/**OFF**, and then select settings for all items in order starting from the top.
2. Select **Save**.

Pre-trip Climate Schedule Setting

Pre-trip Climate can only operate for up to 30 minutes. A new schedule cannot be set if there is another valid schedule within those 30 minutes.

Pre-trip Climate Operation Settings

Pre-trip Climate Operation can be set.
Select a desired setting.



The following items can be set.

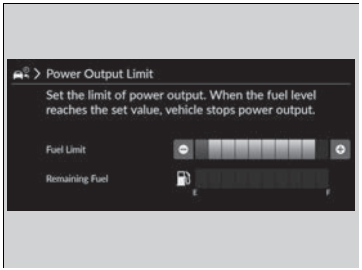
- **Target Temperature**: Selects temperature adjustments. (**Lo** ~ **58** ~ **72**[*1] ~ **86** ~ **Hi**)
- **Operating Time**: Selects operating time. (**10 minutes/20 minutes/30 minutes**[*1])
- **Automatic Defroster**: The On/Off settings for operating the defroster automatically. (**ON**[*1]/**OFF**)

*1: Default Setting

Continued

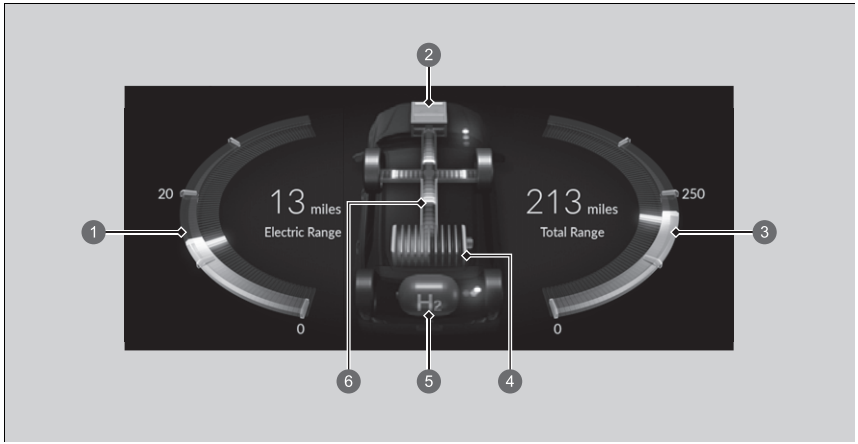
■ Power Output Limit Settings

Use the adjuster bar or press ⊕/⊖ to set the external power output H2 limit.



Power Flow

The power flow screen shows the vehicle's power flow and range on the remaining power and fuel.



❶ Electric Range
❷ FC Stack Icon
❸ Total Range
❹ High Voltage Battery Level Gauge
❺ Hydrogen Tank Icon
❻ Power Flow

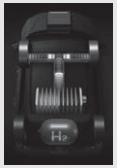
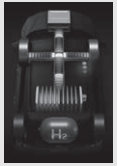
Power Flow

While the vehicle is stationary with the FC system operating, the following may appear on the display.

Continued

Shows the FC system power flow, indicating what is supplying power to the vehicle and/or charging the battery.

▶ The indicator for the power transmission appears in blue, and for the battery charging operation, in green.

Display	Color of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Blue	While Driving: Power is being supplied by the FC system.
	Blue	While Driving: Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery.
	Blue	While Driving: Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery and FC system.

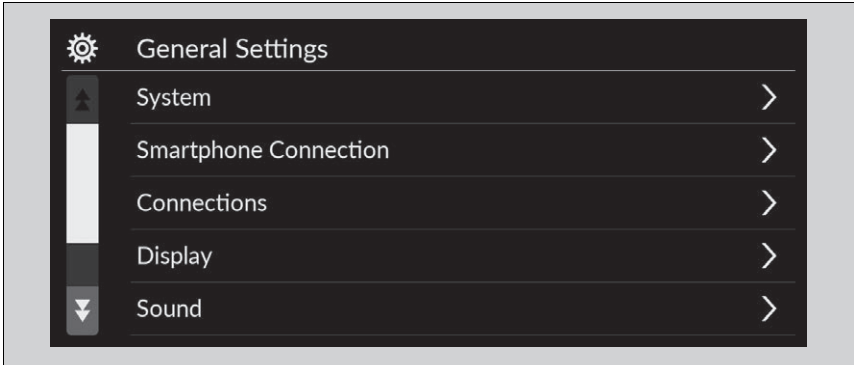
Display	Color of indicators	Vehicle's Condition
	Green	While Decelerating: High Voltage battery is being charged by regenerative braking and FC system.
	Blue and Green	While Driving: Power is being supplied and the High Voltage battery is being charged by the FC system.
	Green	When Stopped: The vehicle is idle (standby state) and the High Voltage battery is being charged by the FC system.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

■ How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System** P. 327
- **Smartphone Connection** P. 330
- **Connections** P. 331
- **Display** P. 332
- **Sound** P. 332
- **Camera** P. 333
- **Voice Control** P. 333

Customized Features

When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to P.

■ **System**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	**Set Date & Time**	**Automatic Date & Time**	Select **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
		Set Date	Adjusts date. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 261	**Day/Month/Year**
		Set Time	Adjusts time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 261	**Hour/Minute AM/PM**
	Time Zone	**Automatic Time Zone**	Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	Auto Daylight Saving Time		Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Date Format		Select a date format.	**MM/DD/YYYY**[*1]**/ DD/MM/YYYY/ YYYY/MM/DD**
	Time Format		Select a time format.	**12H**[*1]**/24H**

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Language		Changes the driver information interface and audio/information screen language separately.	**English**[*1]**/Español/Français**
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High/Normal**[*1]
System Volumes	**System Sounds**	Sets the system sound volume level.	—
	Text-to-Speech	Sets the text-to-speech volume level.	—
	Navigation Guidance	Sets the navigation guidance volume level.	—
	Ringtone	Sets the phone call volume level.	—
	Default	Resets all **System Volumes** settings to default values.	
Data Sharing Setting		Turns data sharing setting on and off. **Start Up** P. 244	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	**Status**	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Legal Information		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 342	**Continue/Cancel**
Detail Information	**App Manager**	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—

■ **Smartphone Connection**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Apple CarPlay	**+ Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350	—
Android Auto	**+ Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to Android Auto. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350	—

■ **Connections**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Wi-Fi	**Change Mode**		Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**Network**[*1]/ **Smartphone Connection**[*2]/**OFF**
	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)		Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
	Options	**Add Network**	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	—
		Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	—
	Setup	**Network SSID**	Sets the network name.	—
		Security	Displays the network security.	—
		Password	Sets required password to connect Wi-Fi device to the network.	—
		Wi-Fi Band	Displays the Wi-Fi band.	—
Bluetooth	**Options**	**Bluetooth**	Turns *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**
		Priority Device	Sets *Bluetooth*® connection priority.	—
	+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new device to HFL. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350	—
	(Saved Devices)		Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired device. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 350	—

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay or Android Auto is connected wirelessly.

Continued

■ **Display**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

■ **Sound**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bass / Treble	**Treble**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 264	—
	Midrange		
	Bass		
Audio Zones & Balance / Fader			
Bose Centerpoint			
Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation			

■ **Camera**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Camera	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 535	**ON***1/**OFF**
	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 535	**ON***1/**OFF**
Cross Traffic Monitor		Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides. ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor** P. 531	**ON***1/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

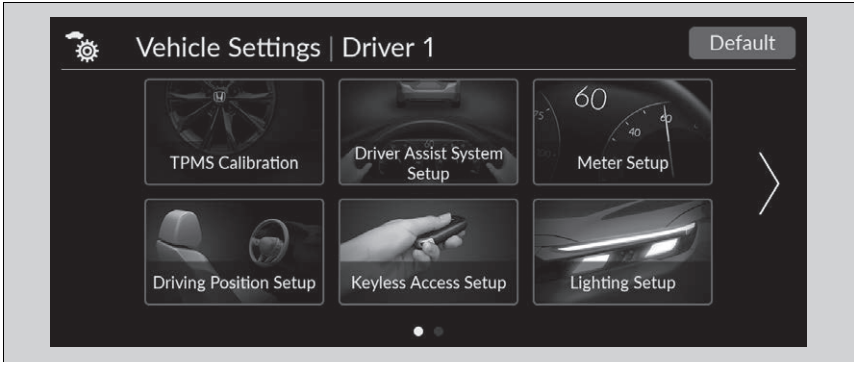
■ **Voice Control**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Voice Control Mode	Selects the mode of the voice portal screen. ➡ **Voice Control Operation** P. 250	**Assist/Normal***1

*1:Default Setting

■ How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **TPMS Calibration** P. 335
- **Driver Assist System Setup** P. 335
- **Meter Setup** P. 337
- **Driving Position Setup** P. 338
- **Keyless Access Setup** P. 338
- **Lighting Setup** P. 339
- **Door/Window Setup** P. 340
- **Power Tailgate Setup** P. 341
- **Climate Control Setup** P. 341
- **Maintenance Info.** P. 341

■ **TPMS Calibration**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
TPMS Calibration	Cancels/calibrates the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS). ➡ **Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)** P. 422	**Calibrate/Cancel**

■ **Driver Assist System Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Forward Collision Warning Distance	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) alerts. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 436	**Long/Normal***1**/Short**
ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep	Turns audible notification on/off when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 464	**ON/OFF***1
Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 456	**Narrow/Normal***1**/Wide/ Warning Only**
Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep	Switches the LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist suspend alert beeps on and off. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 485 ➡ **Traffic Jam Assist** P. 495	**ON/OFF***1

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Blind Spot Info	Toggles the blind spot information system audible alert. ➡ **Blind Spot Information System** P. 427	**Audible And Visual Alert**[*1]/**Visual Alert**
Traffic Sign Recognition System Display Setting	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on the instrument panel. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 504	**Display**[*1]/**None**
Traffic Sign Recognition System Speed Limit Warning	Enables over speed limit warning when speed limit is exceeded. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 504	**ON/OFF**[*1]
Speed Limit Warning Threshold Setting	When **Traffic Sign Recognition System Speed Limit Warning** setting is on, select speed limit warning threshold based on personal preference. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 504	**Speed Limit**[*1]/**Speed Limit +3mph**/**Speed Limit +5mph**/**Speed Limit +10mph** (When mph is selected) **Speed Limit**[*1]/**Speed Limit +5km/h**/**Speed Limit +10km/h**/**Speed Limit +15km/h** (When km/h is selected)
Rear Sensor Setting	Select to turn the rear parking sensor ON or OFF. This selection will also affect the rear Low Speed Braking Control. ➡ **Parking Sensor System** P. 526 ➡ **Low Speed Braking Control** P. 450	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Meter Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➡ **Outside Temperature** P. 127	**-5°F ~ ±0°F**[*1] **~ +5°F**
"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the timing to reset Trip A. ➡ **Range/Fuel/Trip Meter** P. 134 ➡ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 137	**When refueled/When charged/ Manually Reset**[*1]**/IGN OFF**
"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the timing to reset Trip B. ➡ **Range/Fuel/Trip Meter** P. 134 ➡ **Speed/Time/Trip Meter** P. 137	**When refueled/When charged/ Manually Reset**[*1]**/IGN OFF**
Adjust Alarm Volume	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning, and indicators.	**High/Mid**[*1]**/Low**
Reverse Alert Tone	Turns the reverse alert sound on/off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Turn By Turn Auto Display	Toggles the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. ➡ **Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 138	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Speed/Distance Units	Selects the trip computer units. ➡ **Speed/Distance Units** P. 142	**km/h · km/mph · miles**[*1]
Rear Seat Reminder	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

■ **Driving Position Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Memory Position Link	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Seat Position Movement At Entry/Exit	Moves the seat rearward when you enter/exit the vehicle. Changes the setting for this feature.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Keyless Access Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Unlock Mode	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	**Driver Door Only**[*1]**/All Doors**
Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Keyless Access Beep	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Lockout Protection	Changes the settings for the lockout protection function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Lighting Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam	Toggles auto high beam function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Interior Light Dimming Time	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ➡ **Interior Lights** P. 210	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ➡ **Automatic Lighting Off Feature** P. 184	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
Auto Light Sensitivity	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	**Max/High/Mid**[*1]**/Low/Min**
Auto Headlight On with Wiper On	Toggles headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in **AUTO** setting. ➡ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 184	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Door/Window Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto Door Lock	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	**With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift From P/OFF**
Auto Door Unlock	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	**All Doors When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]**/All Doors When Shifted to Park/All Doors With IGN OFF/OFF**
Walk Away Auto Lock	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
Lock Presetting	Toggles the lock presetting function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Keyless Lock Answer Back	Toggles flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by the keyless remote. ➡ **Using the Remote Transmitter** P. 155	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Remote Window Control	Turns the remote window control on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Power Tailgate Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Open Mode	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	**Anytime**[*1]**/When Unlocked**
Power Open By Outer Handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	**ON (Power/Manual)**[*1]**/OFF (Manual Only)**
Hands Free Access Function	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Climate Control Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Driver Seat automatic Climate Control	Automatic climate control of driver seat with automatic air conditioner. Changes the interlocking control setting.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Passenger Seat automatic Climate Control	Automatic climate control of passenger seat with automatic air conditioner. Changes the interlocking control setting.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Maintenance Info.**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Maintenance Info.	Resets the maintenance information. ➡ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 565	**Select Reset Items**

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting General Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
▶ The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default**.
4. Select **Yes**.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third-party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

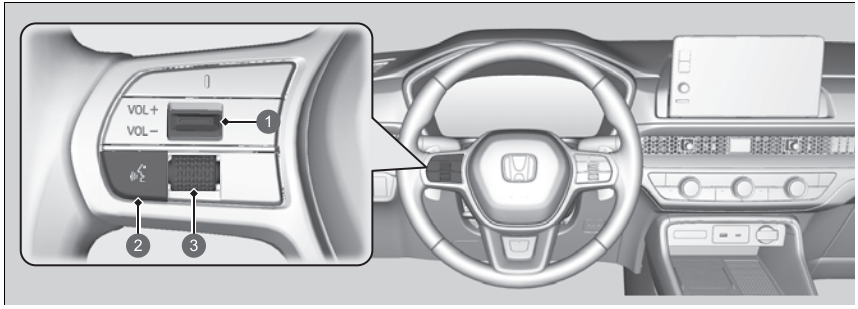
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, you cannot use the HondaLink® because it goes offline.
HondaLink® P. 296

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system without handling your cell phone.

HFL Buttons



❶ **VOL**+/**VOL**– (Volume) Switch
❷ (Talk) Button
❸ Left Selector Wheel

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*®-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities: Visit *https://mygarage.honda.com/s/honda-handsfreelink-compatibility-check*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, HFL is unavailable.

Customized Features P. 326

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a phonebook name or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

If there is no Favorite Contact entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

Favorite Contacts P. 356

Continued

(Talk) button: Press to access Voice Portal.
Left Selector Wheel: Roll up or down to select (phone) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.
While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 360

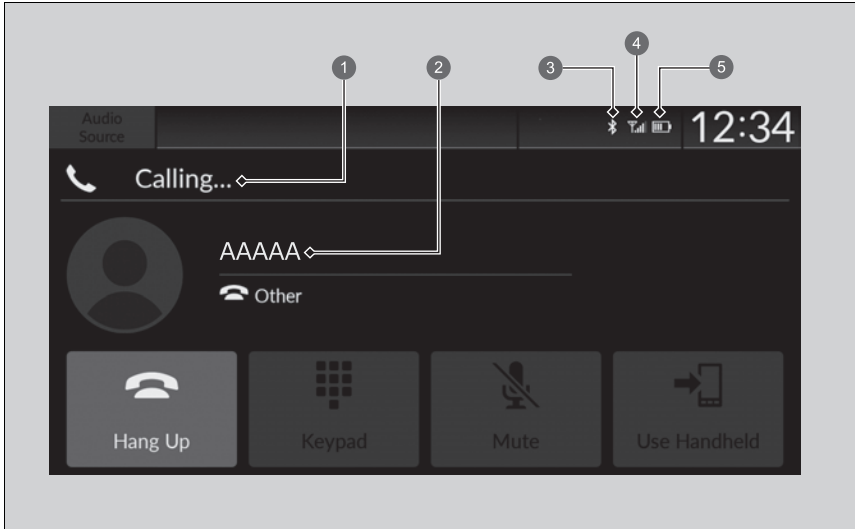
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



1. HFL Mode
2. Caller's Name (if registered)/Caller's Number (if not registered)
3. *Bluetooth*® Indicator
   Appears when your phone is connected to HFL.
4. Signal Strength
5. Battery Level Status

HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

Continued

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

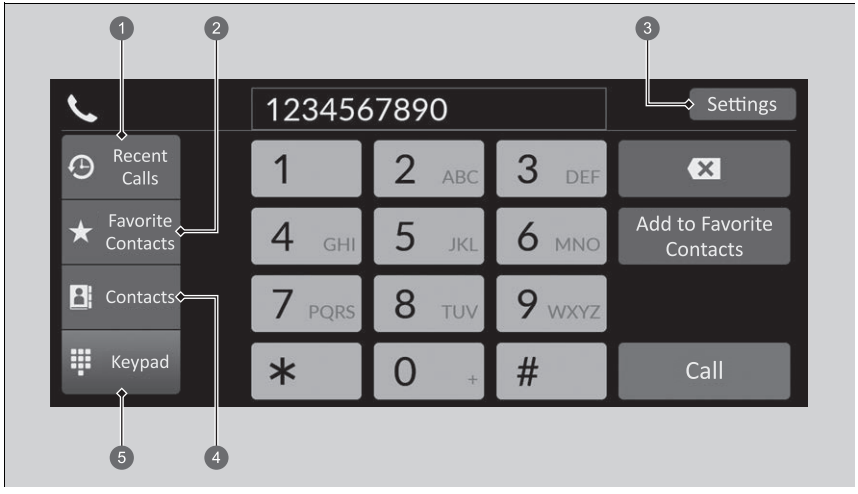
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored phonebook names or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➲ **Favorite Contacts** P. 356

HFL Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



❶ Recent Calls
❷ Favorite Contacts
❸ Settings
❹ Contacts
❺ Keypad

HFL Menus

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*®-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

Continued

Recent Calls: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
➡ **To make a call using the recent calls** P. 358
Favorite Contacts: Dials the selected number in the favorite contacts entry.
➡ **To make a call using favorite contacts entry** P. 358
Settings: Changes the phone settings.
➡ **Phone Settings Screen** P. 349
Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.
➡ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 359
Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.
➡ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 359

Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.

Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

Phone Setup P. 350

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Recent calls P. 354

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.

Automatic Transferring P. 355

Ringtone: Selects the ringtone.

Ringtone P. 355

HondaLink Assist: Turns HondaLink® Assist on and off.

In Case of Emergency or Vehicle Trouble P. 663

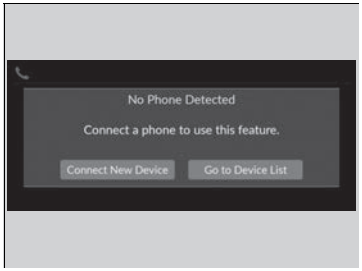
Continued

■ Phone Setup

■ *Bluetooth*® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.



■ **To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select Vehicle Name from your phone.
▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
▶ Confirm if the pairing codes on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. Select **Yes** or **No**.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*®-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.
: The phone can be used with HFL.
: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.
: The phone is compatible with Android Auto.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*®-compatible devices is unavailable.

Continued

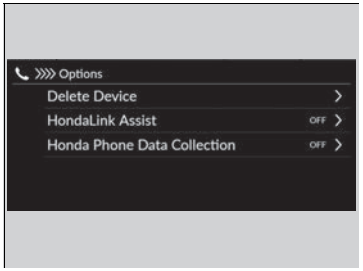
■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
   - ▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
   - ▶ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
5. Select (audio), (phone), (Apple CarPlay) or (Android Auto).
   - ▶ and can be selected simultaneously; however, when or is selected, and cannot be selected.
   - ▶ If you want to cancel the automatic *Bluetooth*® connection, uncheck all icons.
6. Select **Apply**.

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFL will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.



■ **To delete a paired phone**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Delete Device**.
7. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

Continued

■ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Recent calls

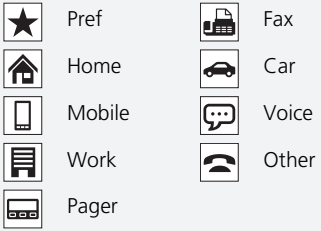
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to enable the cellular phonebook to be imported.

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
▶ The default setting is **Phone**.

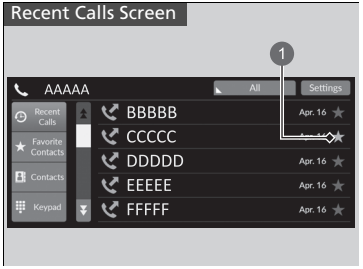
Ringtone

Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.
Phone: Depending on the make and model of the cell phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Continued

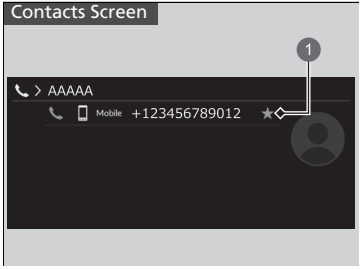
■ Favorite Contacts

Recent Calls Screen



1 Star Icon

Contacts Screen



1 Star Icon

■ To add favorite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.

2. Select **Recent Calls**, **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

On the Recent Calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

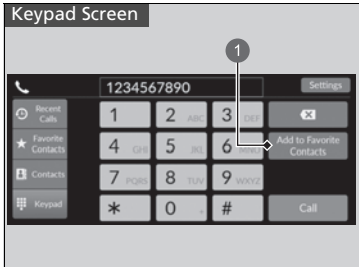
On the Keypad screen

3. Select **Add to Favorite Contacts**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the favorite contact is successfully stored.

▶ To remove the favorite contact, select the star icon again.

Keypad Screen



❶ Add to Favorite Contacts

■ To edit favorite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favorite Contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the favorite contact entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

■ To delete favorite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favorite Contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the favorite contact entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Continued

■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent Calls**, **Favorite Contacts**, and **Contacts** entries.

■ To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent Calls**.
▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialed**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using favorite contacts entry

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favorite Contacts**.
▶ You can change the order of favorite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with HandsFreeLink® and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

To make a call using the recent calls

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.

All: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
Dialed: Displays the last outgoing calls.
Missed: Displays the last missed calls.
Received: Displays the last incoming calls.

■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Last Name**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Continued

■ Receiving a Call

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.
To pick up the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

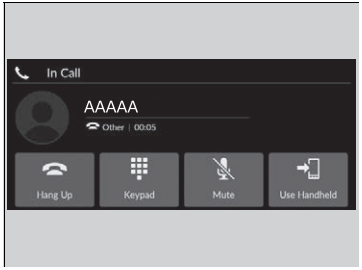
▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.
Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Select if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and on the driver information interface.

■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

The following error messages are just examples. If you see an error message not listed below, follow the on-screen instructions to clear it.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about a few seconds, then plays the next file.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
Device No Response	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
USB hub not supported	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.

Error Message	Solution
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

SiriusXM® Radio Service

■ Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription. To see the ID on the screen, select **Channel** 0.
2. Have your radio ID ready, and either call or visit the SiriusXM® website to subscribe.

■ Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

Switch to the SiriusXM® mode by using the audio remote controls on the steering wheel, or through the audio/information screen, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

■ SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages

Channel ** is not subscribed. Call SiriusXM to subscribe.*1**
You are not subscribed to the channel selected.
Subscription Updated:
SiriusXM® radio is receiving information update from the network.
Channel Not Available:
No such channel exists, or the artist or title information is unavailable.
No Signal:
The signal is too weak in the current location.
Check Tuner:
There is a problem with the SiriusXM® tuner. Contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
Antenna Disconnected, Antenna Shorted:
There is a problem with the SiriusXM® antenna. Contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
*1: ****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon the channel selected.

Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:
SiriusXM® Radio at *www.siriusxm.com/subscribenow*, or 1-866-635-2349

Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:
- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
Made for iPod touch® (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015
Made for iPhone 4S/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 12 mini

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

The Lightning connector works with iPhone 5, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6s, iPhone 6s Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPod touch (5th, 6th generation).

The 30-pin connector works with iPhone 4S.

USB works with iPhone 4S, iPhone 5, iPhone 5s, iPhone 5c, iPhone 6, iPhone 6 Plus, iPhone 6s, iPhone 6s Plus, iPhone SE, iPhone 7, iPhone 7 Plus, iPhone 8, iPhone 8 Plus, iPhone X, iPhone XS, iPhone XS Max, iPhone XR, iPhone 11, iPhone 11 Pro, iPhone 11 Pro Max, iPhone SE (2nd generation), iPhone 12, iPhone 12 Pro, iPhone 12 Pro Max, iPhone 12 mini, iPod touch (5th, 6th generation).

■ USB Flash Drives

Please use a recommended USB flash drive of 256MB or higher formatted with FAT16 or FAT32.

- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV formats may be unsupported.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Honda App License Agreement

■ END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE CAREFULLY READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (THIS "AGREEMENT") WHICH GOVERNS YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE INSTALLED ON YOUR HONDA OR ACURA VEHICLE (YOUR "VEHICLE") AS WELL AS THE APPLICATIONS, SERVICES, FUNCTIONS, AND CONTENT PROVIDED THROUGH THE SOFTWARE (COLLECTIVELY, THE "SERVICES"). YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL SERVE AS YOUR CONSENT TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. THE SOFTWARE IS OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY AMERICAN HONDA MOTOR CO. INC., ("HONDA," "US," "WE," OR "OUR"), WITH ITS BUSINESS ADDRESS AT 1919 TORRANCE BLVD., TORRANCE, CA 90501. REFERENCE TO "HONDA" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES HONDA'S PARENT COMPANY AND ITS AFFILIATES AND DESIGNATED AGENTS. THE SERVICES ARE OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY HONDA OR A THIRD-PARTY SERVICE PROVIDER (A "PROVIDER"). REFERENCE TO A "PROVIDER" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES SUCH PROVIDER'S PARENT COMPANY, AFFILIATES, AND DESIGNATED AGENTS.

A. Description of the Software. The SOFTWARE includes the software, firmware and the like, installed and executing on your VEHICLE during manufacture, and thereafter updated from time to time by HONDA, you or an authorized HONDA dealer (a "DEALER"). The SOFTWARE allows you to access and use a variety of SERVICES, including but not limited to: (a) HONDA applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "HONDA SERVICES"); and (b) PROVIDER applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "PROVIDER SERVICES"), each of which may provide access to various information, media, content, and services.

B. SOFTWARE Licensing and Intellectual Property.

1. SOFTWARE. This AGREEMENT grants you a non-exclusive, limited, and revocable license to use the SOFTWARE and SERVICES solely (a) as installed on your VEHICLE by HONDA, (b) as updated on your Vehicle by HONDA, you (but only as and when directed by HONDA), or a DEALER and (c) as permitted under the terms of this AGREEMENT.

2. HONDA Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various HONDA SERVICES. Installation, activation, or use of HONDA SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies applicable to those HONDA SERVICES (the "HONDA TERMS"). You acknowledge and agree that any collection, use, sharing of data generated by your VEHICLE or your use of your VEHICLE, and your use of the HONDA SERVICES shall be subject to this AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS that may be specifically applicable to such HONDA SERVICES or data generation. The HONDA SERVICES may collect, use, and share such data while you are using the SOFTWARE.

3. Open-Source Software. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may incorporate software licensed to HONDA under free or open-source licenses which govern HONDA's distribution and your use of such software. HONDA and the third-party authors, licensors, and distributors of such software disclaim all warranties and all liability arising from any and all use or distribution of the software. To the extent such software is provided under terms that differ from the applicable free or open-source licenses, those terms are offered by HONDA alone. Additional information regarding free and open-source software incorporated in the SOFTWARE and SERVICES is available in this manual or within the SOFTWARE.

4. Provider Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various PROVIDER SERVICES. Installation or use of such PROVIDER SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies of the applicable PROVIDER (the "PROVIDER TERMS"). This AGREEMENT restricts the manner in which you can install and use PROVIDER SERVICES but does not grant you a license or permission to use such PROVIDER SERVICES. Your permission to use PROVIDER SERVICES is limited and subject to any license grants, conditions, and limitations included in the PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge that any collection, use, sharing of your information, targeted advertising practices by PROVIDERS, and your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES shall be subject to both this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS. The PROVIDER SERVICES may collect, use, and share such information while you are using the SOFTWARE.

5. License Limitations and Restrictions on Use.
(a) Limited License. You understand and agree that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are licensed, not sold, to you solely for use in accordance with this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and any documentation for the VEHICLE made available to you by HONDA (any "DOCUMENTATION"). HONDA and its licensors reserve all rights in the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES not expressly granted to you under this AGREEMENT. PROVIDERS and their licensors reserve all rights in the PROVIDER SERVICES not expressly granted to you under the applicable PROVIDER TERMS.

(b) Restrictions on Use. The licenses granted under this AGREEMENT do not permit you to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES on a device other than your VEHICLE. As a condition of using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, you agree that you may not and will not:

(1) copy, download, distribute, modify, publish, sell, rent, lease, lend, license, sublicense, reuse, or create derivative works of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or any of the content or other material within the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including without limitation, HONDA or PROVIDER names, logos, or any other trademarks of HONDA or PROVIDERS or used in association with the SOFTWARE or any SERVICES, except as required to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in accordance with this AGREEMENT, any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and the DOCUMENTATION;

(2) access or use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any manner intended to damage or impair the operation of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or interfere with anyone else's use and enjoyment of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES;

(3) access or attempt to access any system or server on which the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is hosted or modify or alter the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any way;

(4) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES for any unlawful purpose, or in violation of any third party rights;

(5) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in violation of any applicable traffic regulations, rules or laws, including but not limited to any driver distraction laws, rules or regulations;

(6) violate the terms of this AGREEMENT, any HONDA TERMS, any PROVIDER TERMS or other applicable third-party terms, conditions, and privacy policies; or

(7) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, attempt to derive the source code of, nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble, or attempt to derive the source code of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted (a) by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or (b) the terms of applicable free or opensource software licenses.

6. Intellectual Property Rights. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, the accompanying DOCUMENTATION, and all copies of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are owned by HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their suppliers or licensors. This AGREEMENT does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their licensors, affiliates, or suppliers.

7. Export Restrictions: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to U.S., European Union, and other export jurisdictions. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use, and destination restrictions issued by the U.S. and other governments.

C. SOFTWARE Operation

1. HONDA reserves the right to suspend or terminate your access to and use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES if you are found to be in violation of this AGREEMENT or as reasonably deemed necessary by HONDA.

2. Eligibility/Registration/Activation. The SOFTWARE is intended for and available to individuals who (a) are of legal age of majority in their jurisdiction of residence (and at least 18 years of age), or are younger than 18 years of age and possess a valid driver's license issued by their jurisdiction of residence, and (b) own or have permissive access to a compatible VEHICLE. We do not knowingly collect any information, including personal information, from children under 13. If we learn or are notified that we have collected personal information of a child under 13, we will immediately take steps to delete such information.

3. Use of PROVIDER SERVICES through the SOFTWARE. Certain PROVIDER SERVICES made available through the SOFTWARE may require that you register or otherwise have an account with the PROVIDER and agree to PROVIDER TERMS. Any use of any of such PROVIDER SERVICES within the SOFTWARE is subject to this AGREEMENT and the applicable PROVIDER TERMS. HONDA does not exercise control over such PROVIDER SERVICES and is not responsible or liable for the availability, security, or content of such PROVIDER SERVICES, and the inclusion of any PROVIDER SERVICES does not imply a referral from, the approval of, or the endorsement by HONDA of such PROVIDER SERVICES. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage relating to or resulting from your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES.

4. Links to Third Party Sites: The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to access third-party sites and content through the use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. The third-party sites and content are not under the control of HONDA. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for such third-party websites and their content or for any damage relating to or resulting from your access or use of such websites and content.

5. Unauthorized Use and Abuse. You are responsible for ensuring your (and any authorized third parties') use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES remains in compliance with this AGREEMENT and all other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge and agree that any use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES occurring through your VEHICLE will be deemed your actions and that HONDA and PROVIDERS may rely upon such actions. You agree to immediately notify us if you suspect fraudulent or abusive activity involving the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. If you so notify us or if we otherwise suspect fraudulent or abusive activity, you agree to cooperate with us in any fraud investigation and to use any fraud prevention measures we prescribe. Your failure to immediately notify us or cooperate to use such measures will result in your liability for all fraudulent usage or abusive activity associated with your VEHICLE.

6. SOFTWARE Updates. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be updated when your VEHICLE is serviced by a DEALER or remotely, over-the-air, by HONDA from time to time; such updates may occur with or without further notice or your future consent. The SOFTWARE may be updated at HONDA's discretion and for any purpose including, without limitation, to patch or otherwise improve the SOFTWARE or SERVICES functionality, security, or stability. All updates to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to this AGREEMENT and any other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS.

7. Uninstalling, Removing, and Replacing the SOFTWARE. Replacing SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES with software or firmware not provided and installed by HONDA or a DEALER will render all representations and warranties for the SOFTWARE, HONDA SERVICES, and VEHICLE functionality reliant upon the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES null and void.

D. SOFTWARE Operational Notices and Warnings

1. Vehicle Geolocation Information. You acknowledge that your VEHICLE may be equipped with certain traffic and map features. The traffic feature will automatically collect and transmit, through GPS technology, your Vehicle's current location (longitude and latitude), travel direction and speed ("VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION") to HONDA and PROVIDERS. The VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION is used by HONDA and PROVIDERS to provide traffic and navigation-related information to you, but may also be used to provide other SERVICES or offers to you. HONDA will not use such VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION for its own marketing efforts, or provide such information to unaffiliated third parties for their own purposes, without your express consent.

2. Potential Map Inaccuracy and Route Safety. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls, routing, or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following suggested routes. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal driving maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals, or clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for such locations and routes. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Navigation features are not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by the SOFTWARE or SERVICES should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

3. Speech Recognition: You acknowledge and understand that HONDA and PROVIDERS may record, retain, and use voices commands when you use the speech recognition components of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. You and all VEHICLE operators and passengers (a) consent to the recording and retention of voice commands in support of providing speech recognition components and (b) release HONDA and PROVIDERS from all claims, liabilities, and losses that may result from any use of such recorded voice commands. Recognition errors are inherent in speech recognition. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.

4. Distraction Hazards. Navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) input or setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause a crash or other serious consequences; the ability to undertake such interactions may also be limited by state or local law, which laws you are responsible to know and follow. Even occasional short scans of the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving at a critical time. Pull over and stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could result in a crash.

Continued

E. Information Collection and Storage

1. Information Collection, Use, Transmission and Storage of Data. Consent to Use of Data: You agree that HONDA and PROVIDERS may collect and use your information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. HONDA may share such information with third parties, including, without limitation, PROVIDERS, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agents, solely to improve their products or to provide services or technologies to you. HONDA, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

2. Information Storage. Depending on the type of multimedia system you have in your VEHICLE, certain information may be stored for ease of use of the SOFTWARE including, without limitation, search history, location history in certain applications, previous and saved destinations, map locations within certain applications, and device numbers and contact information.

(a) Vehicle Health Information. Your VEHICLE may remotely transmit information regarding the status and health of your VEHICLE ("VEHICLE INFORMATION") to HONDA without notification to you. VEHICLE INFORMATION may contain VEHICLE maintenance and malfunction status that is derived from VEHICLE diagnostic data and includes, but is not limited to, status of powered doors and windows, battery life data, battery charging data, VEHICLE speed, coolant temperature, air compressor revolution, output power, warning codes, diagnostic trouble codes, fuel injection volume, and engine rotations per minute. VEHICLE HEALTH INFORMATION may be used by HONDA for research and development, to deliver HONDA SERVICES and information to you, and to contact you, and is retained only for a period of time necessary to fulfill these goals.

(b) VEHICLE Geolocation Data (non-navigation/map based). If you opt-in to geolocation-based SERVICES, your vehicle's geolocation data (latitude and longitude) will be automatically sent from your VEHICLE to HONDA and PROVIDERS.

(c) You understand that the inputting or uploading of information to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is at your own risk and that HONDA is not responsible for unauthorized access to or use of any personal or other information. All information uploaded to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be stored on your VEHICLES's multimedia system and you understand that the security and safety of your VEHICLE's multimedia system is your sole responsibility.

F. NO WARRANTY. You understand and agree that your use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are solely at your own risk and that you will be solely responsible for any damage to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or any other equipment or any loss of data that may result from your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. THE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES ARE PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESSED, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY. WE SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. HONDA makes no warranties that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will meet your requirements, or that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will be uninterrupted, timely, secure, non-infringing or error free. You understand and agree that you are responsible for any and all charges, costs or expenses associated with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. Advice or information, whether oral or written, obtained by you from us or through the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are provided for informational purposes only and will not create any warranty not expressly made herein. You should not rely on any such information or advice. We assume no liability or responsibility for any errors or omissions in the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. We do not make any warranty or representation that your use of the material displayed on, or obtained through, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is non-infringing of any rights of any third party. Any decision or action taken by you on the basis of information or content provided via the application is at your sole discretion and risk. HONDA and PROVIDERS are not responsible or liable for any such decision, or for the accuracy, completeness, usefulness, or availability of any content or information displayed, transmitted, or otherwise made available via the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. To the extent jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of certain warranties, some of the above exclusions may not apply to you.

G. LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY. You and HONDA are each waiving important rights.
1. Limitations on YOUR liability. HONDA cannot recover from you any consequential, indirect, incidental, or special damages, or attorney's fees in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES. HONDA WAIVES TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

2. Limitation on HONDA and PROVIDER liability. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable to you or any other party for consequential, indirect, incidental, special, or punitive damages (including without limitation lost profits) in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if HONDA or PROVIDERS are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). To the extent that a jurisdiction does not permit the exclusion or limitation of liability as set forth herein our liability is limited to the maximum extent permitted by law in such states. If HONDA or PROVIDERS are found liable to you for any reason, you agree that the aggregate liability of all these parties to you for any claim is limited to ten U.S. dollars (US $10.00). Neither HONDA nor any PROVIDER would have agreed to provide the SOFTWARE or SERVICES to you if you did not agree to this limitation. This amount is the sole and exclusive liability of HONDA and PROVIDERS to you, and is payable as liquidated damages and not as a penalty. Except where prohibited by law, you may not bring any claim against HONDA or any third-party beneficiary more than two (2) years after the claim arises. We do not have any liability for SOFTWARE or SERVICES interruptions of any length.

(a) Release of HONDA and PROVIDERS For yourself and anyone else claiming under you, you agree to release and discharge HONDA, PROVIDERS, their respective officers, directors, and employees, and each third-party beneficiary from all claims, liabilities and losses in connection with the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including, but not limited to claims for personal injury or property damage arising from the total or partial failure of performance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if caused by or based upon the negligence, gross negligence, strict products liability, Deceptive Trade Practices Act violations, bad faith, or breach of warranty of us or the malfunction of the SOFTWARE or SOFTWARE SERVICES. YOU AGREE TO WAIVE TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT. YOU HEREBY RELEASE AND DISCHARGE HONDA AND ITS LICENSORS AND CONTRACTORS (INCLUDING ANY THIRD PARTIES PROVIDING ALL OR PART OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES) FROM AND AGAINST ANY CLAIMS, DAMAGES, EXPENSES AND LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO ANY INJURIES, DAMAGES, OR LOSSES TO ANY PERSON (INCLUDING DEATH) OR PROPERTY OF ANY KIND RESULTING IN WHOLE OR PART, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, FROM YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES.

H. Survival. You agree that the limitations of liability and indemnities in this AGREEMENT will survive even after the AGREEMENT has ended. These limitations of liability apply not only to you, but to anyone using the SOFTWARE or SERVICES via your VEHICLE, to anyone making a claim on your behalf, and to any claims made by your family, employees, customers, or others arising out of or relating to your VEHICLE, the SOFTWARE, or SERVICES.

I. Availability/Interruption. The SOFTWARE and certain SERVICES are made available through your VEHICLE's compatible multimedia system when the VEHICLE is turned on. Certain SERVICES may be available only through your compatible mobile device when it is within the operating range of the VEHICLE and a wireless carrier. The availability of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be subject to transmission limitation or interruption, including but not limited to technical obsolesce or sunsetting of the hardware, software or firmware, inside of or external to the Vehicle, required for data transmission or receipt. HONDA does not guarantee that the SOFTWARE, SERVICES, or any portion thereof will be available at all times or in all areas. You acknowledge and agree that HONDA is not responsible for performance degradation, interruption or delays. You acknowledge that HONDA shall not be liable to you if the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in a given location are not available. If the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are not available within your intended location, you agree that your sole remedy shall be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

J. PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is provided by HONDA. For product support, please refer to HONDA instructions provided in the DOCUMENTATION. Should you have any questions concerning this AGREEMENT, or if you desire to contact HONDA for any other reason, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

K. Termination and Transfer.

1. Termination. This AGREEMENT is effective until terminated by you or US. WE may terminate this AGREEMENT for any or no reason, and with or without notice to you. Your rights under this AGREEMENT will terminate automatically without notice from US if you fail to comply with any term of this AGREEMENT. Upon termination of this AGREEMENT, you shall cease all use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

2. Transfer: You may permanently transfer your rights under this AGREEMENT only as part of a sale or transfer of the VEHICLE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, and any upgrades), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this AGREEMENT. You agree to notify HONDA upon the sale or transfer of the VEHICLE. To contact HONDA, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

L. Changes to the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. WE may change, modify, or update the SOFTWARE or SERVICES from time to time. Unless explicitly stated otherwise, any new features or services that augment or enhance the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in the future shall respectively be considered part of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES and subject to this AGREEMENT. WE reserve the right at any time and from time to time to interrupt, restrict, modify, suspend, discontinue, temporarily or permanently, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES (or any portion thereof), with or without notice to you, and you agree that HONDA shall not be liable to you or to any third party for any modification, suspension or discontinuance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES.

M. ARBITRATION:

PLEASE READ THIS ARBITRATION PROVISION CAREFULLY TO UNDERSTAND YOUR RIGHTS. YOU AGREE THAT ANY CLAIM THAT YOU MAY HAVE IN THE FUTURE MUST BE RESOLVED THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION. YOU WAIVE THE RIGHT TO HAVE YOUR DISPUTE HEARD IN COURT AND WAIVE THE RIGHT TO BRING CLASS CLAIMS. YOU UNDERSTAND THAT DISCOVERY AND APPEAL RIGHTS ARE MORE LIMITED IN ARBITRATION.

Arbitration is a method of resolving a claim, dispute or controversy without filing a lawsuit. By agreeing to arbitrate, the right to go to court is waived and instead claims, disputes or controversies are submitted to binding arbitration. This provision sets forth the terms and conditions of our agreement. YOU and HONDA agree and acknowledge that this Agreement affects interstate commerce and the Federal Arbitration Act ("FAA") applies. By using the Software, Vehicle, or Services, YOU elect to have disputes resolved by arbitration. YOU, HONDA or any involved third party may pursue a Claim. "Claim" means any dispute between YOU, HONDA, or any involved third party relating to your use of the Software, the Vehicle, or the Services, this Agreement, or our relationship, including any representations, omissions or warranties. "Claim" does not include personal injury or wrongful death claims. YOU or HONDA may seek remedies in small claims court or provisional judicial remedies without arbitrating. In addition, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, YOU or HONDA may seek equitable relief in a court of competent jurisdiction.

YOU or HONDA may select arbitration with American Arbitration Association, JAMS or National Arbitration and Mediation. Contact these sponsors for their rules. The hearing will be in the federal district where YOU reside. If agreed, it may be by telephone or written submissions. Filing and arbitrator fees to be paid per the sponsor rules. You may contact the sponsor for a fee waiver. If no fee waivers, HONDA will pay filing and arbitrator fees up to $5,000, unless law requires more. Each party is responsible for other fees. Arbitrator may award costs or fees to prevailing party, if permitted by law. HONDA will not seek fees, unless the claims are frivolous.

Arbitrator shall be an attorney or current or retired judge familiar with automotive or consumer software. The arbitrator shall follow substantive law, statute of limitations and decide all issues relating to the interpretation, construction, enforceability and applicability of this provision. The arbitrator may order relief permitted by law. This provision is governed and enforceable by the FAA. An award shall include a written opinion and be final, subject to appeal by the FAA.
This provision survives termination of this Agreement or relationship, bankruptcy, assignment or transfer. If part of this provision is unenforceable, the remainder remains in effect. If unenforceability allows arbitration as a class action, then this provision is entirely unenforceable. You may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at American Honda Motor Co., Inc. Honda Automobile Customer Service Mail Stop CHI-5, 1919 Torrance Blvd. Torrance, CA 90501-2746. HONDA reserves the right to make changes to this provision after providing written notice and an opportunity to opt out.

N. Miscellaneous: You may not assign this AGREEMENT without HONDA's prior written consent. This AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS represents the entire agreement between you and US. HONDA may amend the terms of this AGREEMENT by providing you with notices of such updated terms. If you do not consent to be bound by the updated terms, your sole remedy will be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES. If any part of this AGREEMENT is found invalid, void, or unenforceable, the balance of the AGREEMENT will remain valid and enforceable according to its terms. To the fullest extent permitted by law, and except as explicitly provided otherwise, this AGREEMENT and any disputes arising out of or relating to it will be governed by the laws of the State of California, except that California laws concerning choice of law or conflicts shall not apply if they would cause the substantive law of another jurisdiction to apply. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Section M shall be governed by the Federal Arbitration Act and the laws of the State of California, as applicable, as set forth therein. The failure to enforce any term of this AGREEMENT on one occasion shall not prevent enforcement on any other occasion or the enforcement of any other term. Headings and captions shall not be considered included for purposes of interpretation or application hereof, but are for convenience only.

About Open Source Licenses

To see the open source license information, follow these steps.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **About**.
5. Select **Legal Information**.
6. Select **License**.

License Information

■ *Bluetooth®*

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/

■ Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

Continued

■ Apple®

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

■ MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.
SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

VC-1
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

Continued

AVC/H.264
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

HD Radio™

HD Radio™ Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation, a subsidiary of Xperi Inc., U.S. and Foreign Patents. For patents see *https://xperi.com/hd-radio-patents/*. *Xperi*, HD Radio, HD, and 'ARC' logos and their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Xperi Inc. and its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

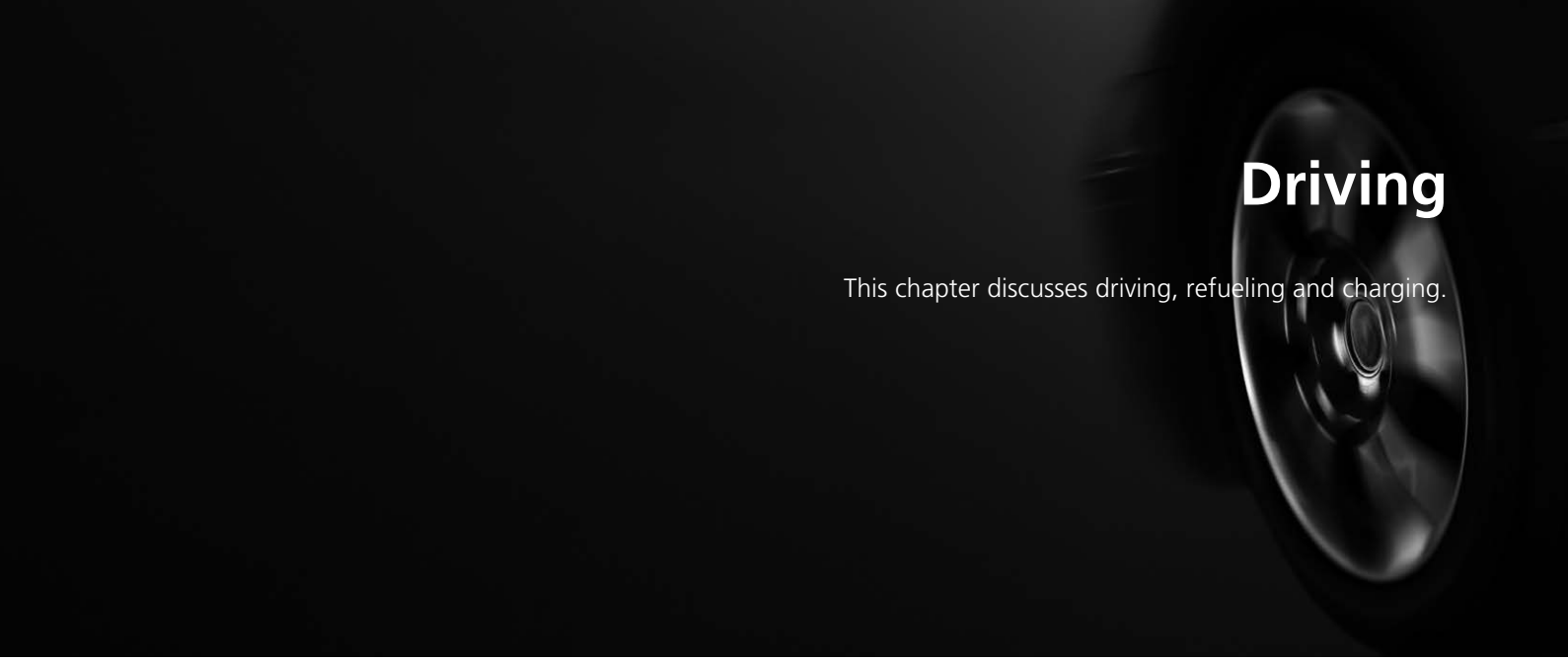
USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL DAMAGES (OTHER THAN AS MAY BE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN CASES INVOLVING PERSONAL INJURY) EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF FIVE DOLLARS ($5.00). THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

This page intentionally left blank.



Driving

This chapter discusses driving, refueling and charging.

Before Driving 388
Towing a Trailer 394
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines 395
When Driving
- Turning on the Power 397
- Precautions While Driving 400
- Transmission 401
- Shifting 402
- Deceleration Paddle Selector 409
- Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 413
- Drive Mode System 414
- Hill Descent Control System 417
- Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System 419
- Agile Handling Assist 421
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 422
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation 425
- Blind Spot Information System 427
- FC System in Extreme Cold-weather Conditions 431

Honda Sensing® 433
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 436
- Low Speed Braking Control 450
- Road Departure Mitigation System 456
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 464
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 485
- Traffic Jam Assist 495
- Traffic Sign Recognition System 504
- Front Sensor Camera 510
- Radar Sensor 512
- Sonar Sensors 513

Braking 514
Parking Your Vehicle 525
Multi-View Rear Camera 535
Refueling 537
Charging 540
Fuel Economy 559

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

■ Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 588
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.
- Disconnect the charger cable.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the power system can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 391
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the tailgate.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 159
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Seats** P. 199
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 207
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Mirrors** P. 197
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 196

Interior Checks

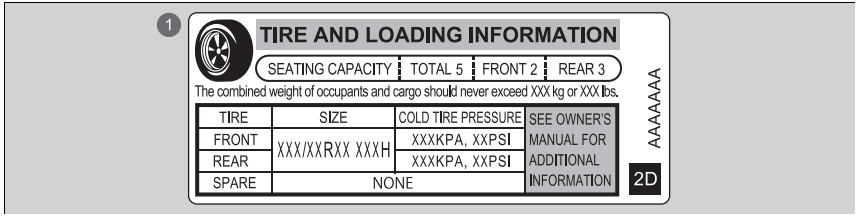
The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area, have the aiming readjusted at an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer or by a qualified technician.

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 58
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 106

Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg). See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.



1 Label Example

This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

Maximum Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo.
➡ **Specifications** P. 666

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.
➡ **Specifications** P. 666

Continued

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

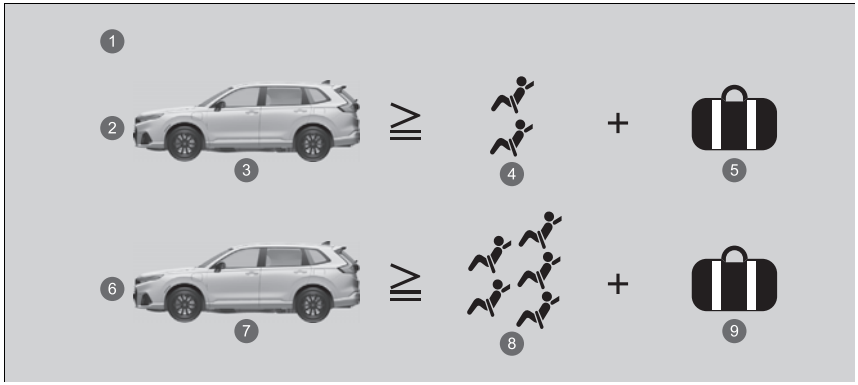
(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Maximum Load Limit

Towing a Trailer:
See Towing a Trailer to determine whether your vehicle is designed to tow a trailer.

Towing a Trailer P. 394

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.



1 Load Limits Example
2 Example 1
3 Max Load 850 lbs (385 kg)
4 Passenger Weight 150 lbs x 2 = 300 lbs (68 kg x 2 = 136 kg)
5 Cargo Weight 550 lbs (249 kg)
6 Example 2
7 Max Load 850 lbs (385 kg)
8 Passenger Weight 150 lbs x 5 = 750 lbs (68 kg x 5 = 340 kg)
9 Cargo Weight 100 lbs (45 kg)

Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

Towing Behind a Motorhome

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

Emergency Towing P. 657

General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement; however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing or other challenging off-highway activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store cargo properly and do not exceed your cargo load limits.
  Maximum Load Limit P. 391
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

Off-Highway Driving Guidelines

⚠WARNING

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off-pavement can cause a crash or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Important Handling Information P. 50
Precautions While Driving P. 400

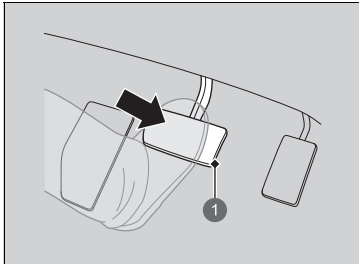
Avoiding Trouble

- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tires, and check the tire pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognize these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight up or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tires as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

Turning on the Power

1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



1 Brake Pedal

2. Depress the brake pedal.

Turning on the Power

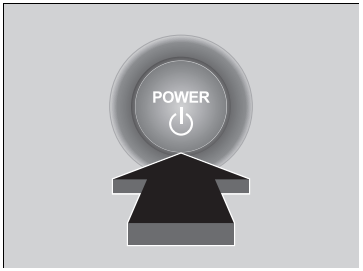
Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when turning the power system on.

When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce 12-volt battery drain.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak
P. 632

Continued



3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.

❶ **READY** Indicator

4. Check the **READY** indicator.
- ▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the **READY** indicator comes on.
- ▶ The **READY** indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
- ▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the **READY** indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the driver information interface.

Turning on the Power

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **POWER** button to turn on the power system. If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the **READY** indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.

➡ **READY Indicator** P. 111

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the power system does not activate.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 173

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.

■ Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the **READY** indicator is on, then put the transmission into [D]. Select [R] when reversing.
2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 514

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into [D] when facing uphill, or [R] when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

■ Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.
1. Depress the brake pedal and change the shift position to [P].
▶ Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that [P] is shown on the shift position indicator.
2. Press the **POWER** button.

Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.
When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA® is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Stopping the Power System

The power mode will automatically turn to VEHICLE OFF about 20 minutes after the following conditions have been met:
- A door has been opened, such as when leaving the vehicle.
- The transmission is in [P].
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.

Precautions While Driving

■ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the center of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy cargo on the roof.

Never carry more than 165 lbs (75 kg) of cargo on the roof rails and crossbars (Honda accessory).

■ In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the power system or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

Do not select a shift button while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

Do not select N while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the FC system or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km) after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

➔ **Important Handling Information** P. 50

Transmission

■ Creeping

As with a conventional gasoline-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift positions

P Parking
Used when parking or before turning the power on or off.

R Reverse
Used when reversing.

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked.

D Drive
- Used for normal driving.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when **SPORT** mode is ON.

Shifting

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

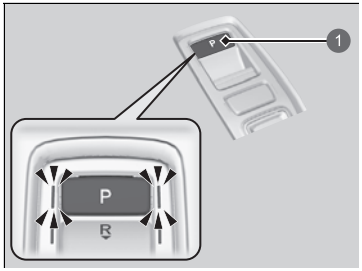
Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

To prevent malfunction and unintended engagement:
- Do not spill any liquids on or around shift buttons.
- Do not place or drop any objects on or around shift buttons.
- Do not let passengers or children operate the shift buttons.

The beeper sounds and the message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the transmission in N. Change the shift position to D or R with the brake pedal depressed.

■ P (parking) button

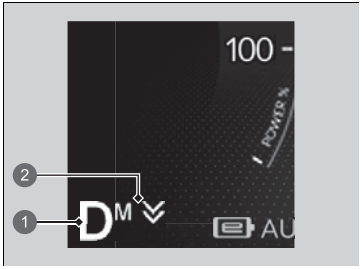


The shift position changes to P when you press the P button while the vehicle is parked with the power mode in ON.
The indicators on the sides of the P button come on.

1 P Button

Continued

■ Shift Operation



❶ Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
❷ Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change [D] to [R] and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift button before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

When changing the shift position to [P], always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that [P] is shown on the shift position indicator.

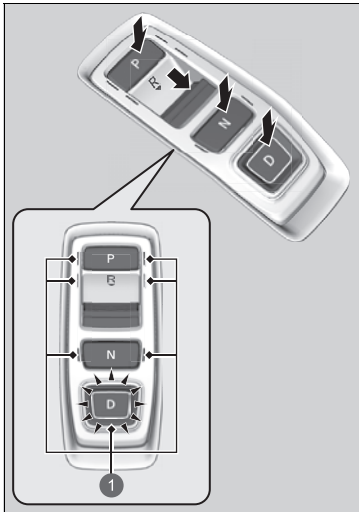
Use the shift position indicator and the shift button indicator to check the shift position before and after selecting a shift button.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer as soon as possible.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-22°F/-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

The beeper sounds once when you change to [R].

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 334



1 Shift Button Indicator

P: Press the P button.

R: Press the R button.

N: Press the N button.

D: Press the D button.

Continued

■ When opening the driver's door

If you open the driver's door under the following conditions, the shift position automatically changes to P.

▶ If you manually change the shift position from P with the brake pedal depressed, the shift position will automatically return to P once you release the brake pedal.

- The vehicle is stationary with the power mode in ON, or moving at 1 mph (2 km/h) or slower.
- The transmission is in other than P.
- You have unfastened the driver side seat belt.

■ When turning off the power mode

If you turn the power system off while the vehicle is stationary, and the transmission is in other than P, the shift position automatically changes to P.

When opening the driver's door

While the system is designed to automatically change the shift position to P under the described conditions, this is only an assistive feature and does not work in all situations. When you leave the driver's seat, change the shift position to P and make sure that P is displayed on the meter.

When Stopped P. 525

If you want to drive the vehicle after the shift position has automatically changed to P under the described conditions, close the door, fasten the seat belt, depress the brake pedal, then change the shift position.

If you leave the vehicle, turn off the power system and lock the doors.

■ If you want to keep the transmission in [N] position [car wash mode]

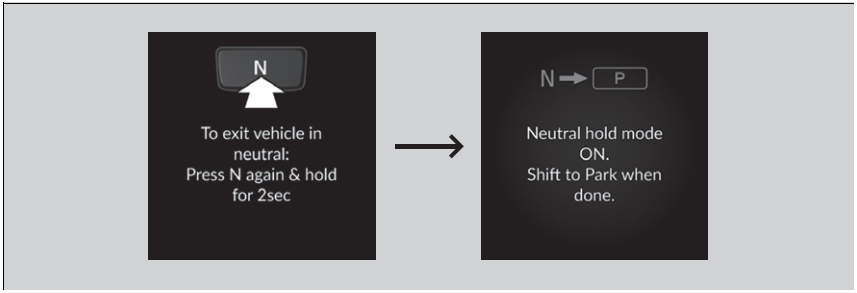
With the power system on:

1. Depress the brake pedal.

2. Make sure the **READY** indicator is on.

3. Press [N]. Within six seconds press and hold [N] for two seconds.

▶ This puts the vehicle in car wash mode which must be used when your vehicle is pulled through a conveyor type automatic car wash where you or an attendant does not remain in the vehicle.



If you want to cancel car wash mode, select a position other than [N].

If you want to reduce fuel consumption in car wash mode:

Press the **POWER** button during car wash mode.

▶ Make sure the **READY** indicator is off.

▶ The shift position remains in [N] with the power mode in ACCESSORY for 15 minutes, then it automatically changes to [P] and the power mode changes to OFF.

Manually changing to [P] cancels ACCESSORY mode. The [P] indicator comes on and the power mode changes to OFF. You must always shift to [P] when car wash mode is no longer needed.

Continued

If you want to keep the transmission in [N] position [car wash mode]

Note that the transmission may not stay in [N] position while any of the following indicators is on:

- **POWER SYSTEM** indicator
- Transmission system indicator
- 12-volt battery charging system indicator

■ **Restrictions on selecting a shift position**

You cannot select a shift position under certain circumstances that may lead to a crash.

When the transmission is in:	1. Under these circumstances:	2. If you try to change to the following:	3. The shift position remains in/changes to:	How to change the shift position
P	The brake pedal is not depressed.	Other shift position	P	Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.
	The accelerator pedal is depressed.			
N	The vehicle is moving at low speed without the brake pedal depressed.		N	
	The vehicle is moving at low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed.			
N or D	The vehicle is moving forward.	R		Park your vehicle in a safe place.
R or N	The vehicle is moving backward.	D		
R, N, or D	The vehicle is moving.	P		
P or N	The **READY** indicator is not on.	A shift position other than P or N	P or N	Make sure that the **READY** indicator comes on.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

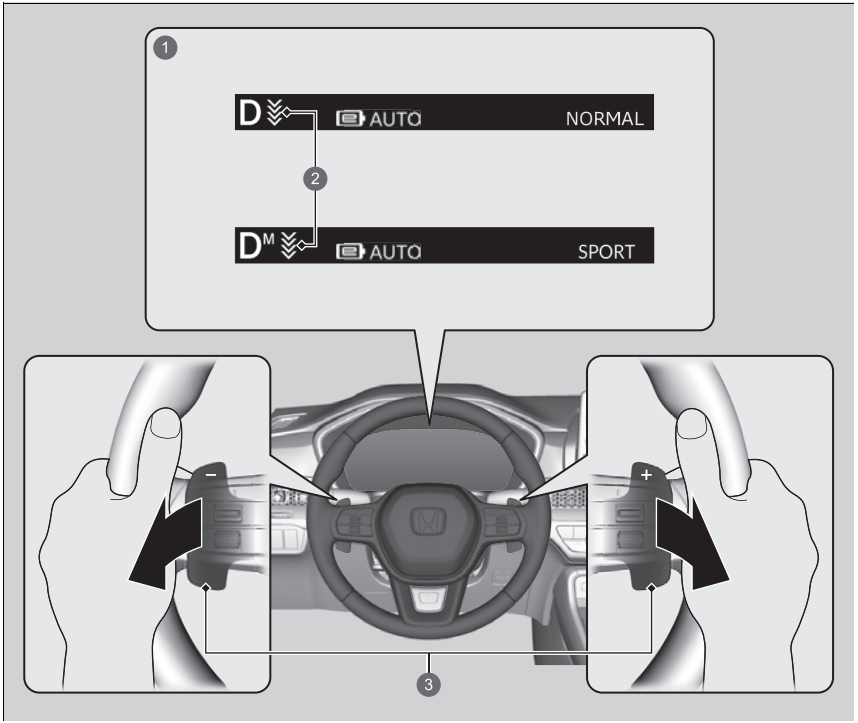
⚠CAUTION

Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tires to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

Continued

■ Deceleration Paddle Selector Operation



1 Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator
2 Deceleration Stage
3 Paddle Selector

■ When SPORT mode is OFF

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the gauge.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, pull the [+] selector (right side) for a few seconds.

The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and the deceleration stage in the gauge will disappear when you drive with constant speed or accelerate, or just before your vehicle stops.

■ When SPORT mode is ON

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the gauge. The deceleration stage is not canceled automatically while **SPORT** mode is ON.

When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, turn the **SPORT** mode OFF or pull the [+] selector (right side) for a few seconds. When canceled, deceleration stage in the gauge disappears.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically when:

- The High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range with **SPORT** mode off.
- Power system protection is needed.

You cannot use the deceleration paddle selector when ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. If either paddle selector is operated while driving, ACC with Low Speed Follow will cancel automatically.

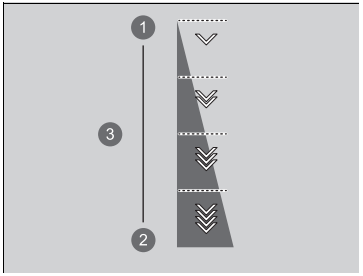
If you pull back the right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.

Continued

■ Common operations

To select the different stages of deceleration:

- Pull back the [+] selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
- Pull back the [−] selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.



Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

▶ The deceleration stage may not change if you keep the paddle selector pulled back.

❶ Decrease
❷ Increase
❸ Deceleration Stage

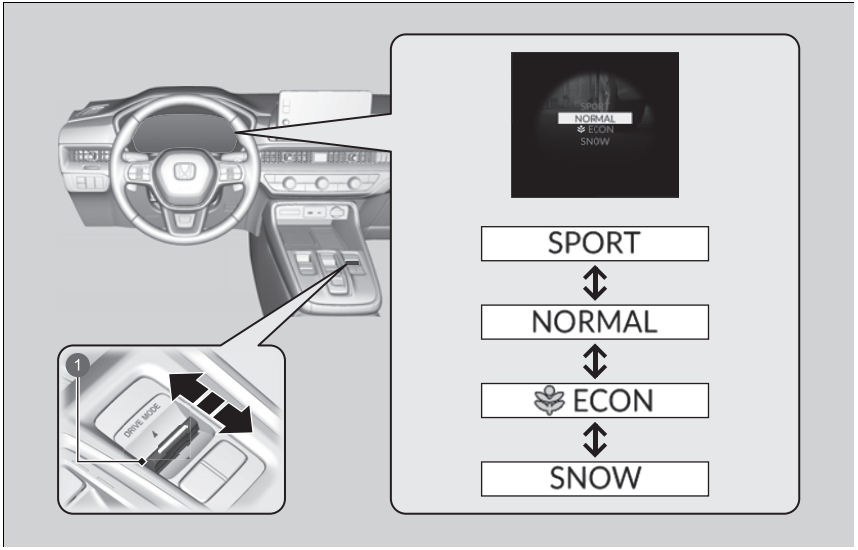
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when the vehicle transmission is in a position other than P and is traveling at speeds of 22 mph (36 km/h) or less.

Drive Mode System

Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch to select the appropriate mode. The mode you select appears on the driver information interface.

■ Selecting the Drive Mode

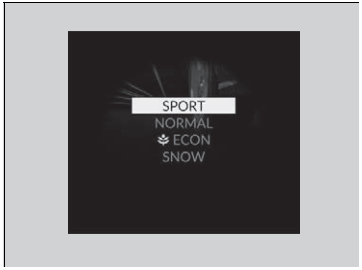


❶ **DRIVE MODE** Switch

Drive Mode System

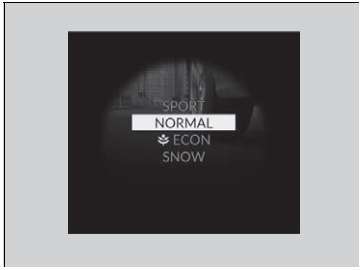
The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions.
If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot change the mode.

SPORT Mode



Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

NORMAL Mode



Optimizes the balance between operability and comfort.

Continued

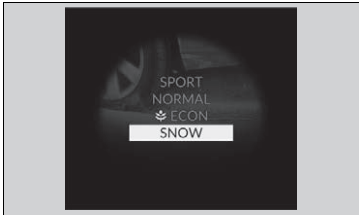
■ ECON Mode

Facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

ECON Mode

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle will be slower to accelerate.

■ SNOW Mode



Maximizes controllability on snowy road through powertrain settings.

SNOW Mode

NOTICE

SNOW mode does not allow you to drive on snowy or frozen roads in all situations. There are limits to **SNOW** mode.

When driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tires or tire chains, reduce speed, and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles.

Winter Tires P. 597

■ Next Start-up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.
Each keyless remote has its own mode saved.

Last Mode	Next Mode
SPORT, **NORMAL** or **SNOW**	**NORMAL**
ECON	**ECON**

Hill Descent Control System

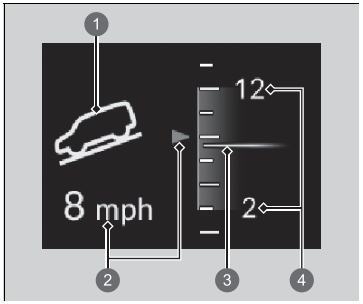
When driving down hills where regenerative braking is not enough to decelerate the vehicle, this system helps maintain a constant vehicle speed without needing to depress the brake pedal.

■ Hill Descent Control Operating Conditions

The system operates under the following conditions.

- Driving at a speed between about 2-12 mph (3-20 km/h).
- Driving downhill.
- Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not depressed.

■ Driver Information Interface Display



❶ The system's operating status
- Green: Activated
- White: Standby

❷ Vehicle speed display
- White: Set speed
- Gray: Current speed
  ▶ Blinks when the vehicle speed is above the operating speed.

❸ Current speed

❹ Operating range of set speed

Hill Descent Control System

⚠WARNING

Hill descent control cannot maintain a constant vehicle speed in every situation.

When driving down a very steep hill or on slippery road surfaces, the vehicle may not be able to maintain the vehicle speed and could cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Since Hill Descent Control is not designed to increase the limits of vehicle performance, the driver must always be aware of road surface conditions and drive safely.

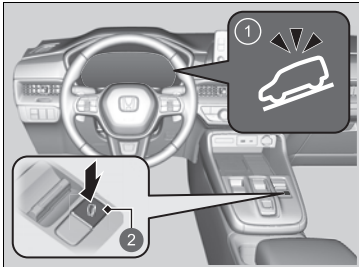
The brake lights automatically come on while the system is in operation.

The system may not operate when driving down a gentle slope. Check the Hill Descent Control System indicator to see if the system is in operation.

The system may activate even when not driving downhill, such as when the vehicle leans while driving over uneven surfaces.

Continued

■ How to Operate Hill Descent Control



❶ Hill Descent Control System Indicator
❷ (Hill Descent Control) Button

■ To turn the system on

When the vehicle speed is less than about 12 mph (20 km/h), press the button to turn the system on.

▶ The system goes into standby mode, and the Hill Descent Control System indicator (white) comes on.

When all the working conditions are met, the system activates, and the vehicle begins to maintain the vehicle speed when driving downhill.

▶ The Hill Descent Control System indicator (green) comes on when operating.

■ To adjust the set speed

Depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the vehicle speed within the operating range. The vehicle speed at which you release the accelerator pedal or brake pedal will be the set speed.

■ To turn the system off

Press the button to turn the system off.

How to Operate Hill Descent Control

Using the system repeatedly for a long time may cause the brakes to heat up and make the system go into standby mode temporarily.

Hill Descent Control is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if it was turned on the last time you drove the vehicle.

The pedals may vibrate or you may hear the system working when in operation.

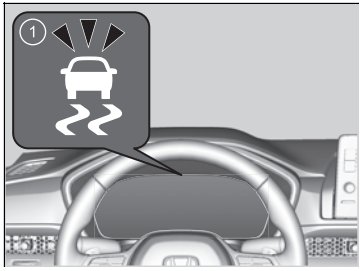
To turn the system off

When the vehicle speed is about 37 mph (60 km/h) or more, the system turns off automatically.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

VSA® helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA® Operation



❶ VSA® System Indicator

When VSA® activates, you may notice that the motor does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

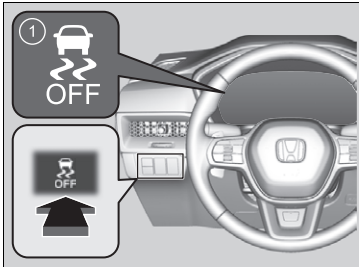
VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tire pressure/TPMS and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

■ VSA® On and Off



❶ VSA® **OFF** Indicator

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA® functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA® functionality/features, press the (VSA® **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off.

When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the motor compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

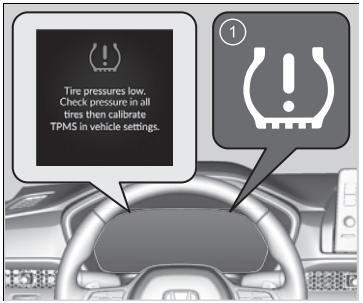
The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the motor compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tire, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tire while you are driving to determine if one or more tires are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

❶ Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tires when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become overinflated in warmer weather.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire.

Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 588

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tire chains are used.
- The tire loses air pressure rapidly.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tires than the condition at calibration.
- Tire chains are used.

■ TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tires.
- Rotate the tires.
- Replace one or more tires.

Before calibrating the TPMS:
- Set the cold tire pressure in all four tires.
  ➡ **Checking Tires** P. 588

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift position is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tire pressure/TPMS and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

TPMS Calibration

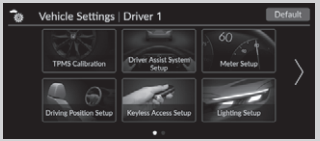
The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 31-62 mph (50-100 km/h).
During this period, if power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tire pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

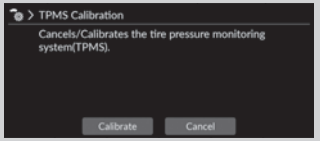
If the tire chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tires are installed, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

We recommend that the tires be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for details.

Continued





When you calibrate the TPMS, do the following.

9-in. Color Touchscreen P. 244

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Select **TPMS Calibration**.
5. Select **Calibrate** or **Cancel**.

- If the **Calibration Failed To Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale

when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Continued

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

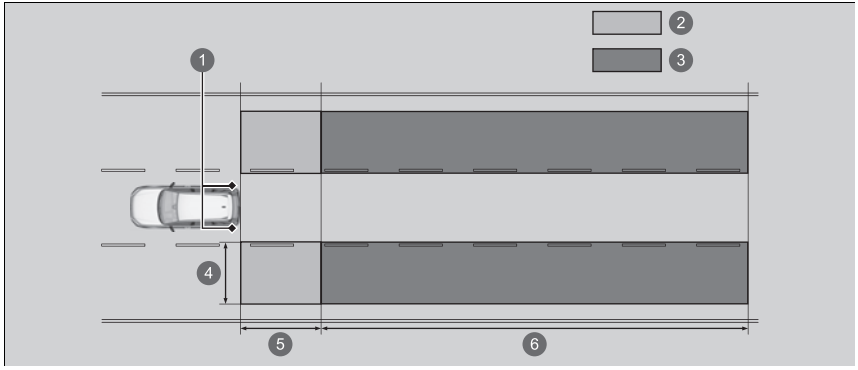
Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Blind Spot Information System

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

How the System works

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 20 mph (32 km/h) or above.



❶ Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners
❷ Alert Zone 1
❸ Alert Zone 2
Alert zone range
❹ Approx. 1.6 ~ 10 feet (0.5 ~ 3 meters) from vehicle side.
❺ Approx. 10 feet (3 meters) from rear bumper.
❻ Approx. 10 ~ 82 feet (3 ~ 25 meters) behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zone (alert zone 1 and 2).

Continued

Blind Spot Information System

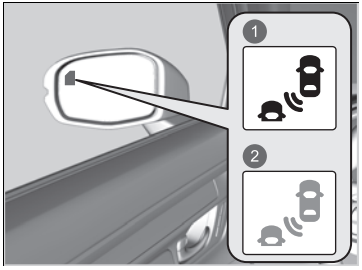
Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the blind spot information system has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the blind spot information system may result in a collision.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer in the following situations:
- The rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted.
- The indicator does not come on even if a vehicle in the alert zone should have been detected.
- The rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zone 1 only until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.

For proper blind spot information system operation:
- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

■ When the system detects a vehicle



❶ Comes On
❷ Blinks

Blind spot information system alert indicator: Located on the outside door mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 31 mph (50 km/h).
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 12 mph (20 km/h).

Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You use the turn signal lever to signal a turn in the direction of the detected vehicle while the blind spot information system alert indicator is on.

▶ The beeper sounds three times.

Blind Spot Information System

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

- The blind spot information system alert indicator does not come on and the **Blind spot information system not available** message appears on the driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tire pressure/TPMS and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Blind Spot Information System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 132
Safety Support P. 140

The blind spot information system will stay on the previously selected on or off setting each time you turn the power system on.

Blind Spot Information System

You can change the settings for the blind spot information system.

Customized Features P. 326

Continued

■ Blind Spot Information System Conditions and Limitations

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The blind spot information system may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is covered by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.
- An object such as a bicycle rack is attached to the rear of the vehicle.

FC System in Extreme Cold-weather Conditions

The FC system may behave differently on cold days. It may operate a special process to improve start-up performance and durability. Operation noises, purge process while parked, etc., differ from usual. However, this is not a malfunction.

On cold days, the power output may be temporarily limited if the vehicle is driven at high vehicle speeds or accelerated suddenly before the FC system warm-up is completed. Operate the vehicle while looking out for the surrounding traffic until the FC system reaches full operating temperature.

If the exhaust pipe is blocked, the power system may stop. In especially cold weather, freezing prevention process while parked may not be able to be performed. Also, the process cannot be carried out if the 12-volt battery terminals are disconnected; consequently, the FC stack (fuel cell body) may deteriorate.

On cold days, the hydrogen gas may be consumed faster than usual.

On cold days, when the power system operates starting/stopping processes or freezing prevention process while parked, water vapor in the exhaust may appear as a white mist emitted from the exhaust pipe. This is not a malfunction.

FC System in Extreme Cold-weather Conditions

⚠CAUTION

When the power system operates stopping process or freezing prevention process while parked in cold weather, a puddle of discharged water may form on the ground and become frozen. If you step on the ice, you may slip and fall, injuring yourself. Beware of the potential for frozen puddles around your vehicle.

Continued

On cold days, you may get sprayed with exhaust water if standing behind the vehicle when:

- The FC system is idling until the **READY** indicator comes on at power system start-up.
- The FC system is in the shutdown process after it was stopped before warm-up is completed.

When the power system is turned on in cold temperatures, its standby operation noise may become louder than in normal temperatures.

FC System in Extreme Cold-weather Conditions

It may take a longer time to start in very cold conditions or may not start at all until temperatures rise.

If the temperature of the fuel cell or the High Voltage battery drops below –22°F (–30°C), the fuel cells will not operate and, as a result, the vehicle will not start. If the warming system operates, wait for the High Voltage battery to warm up. If it does not operate, move the vehicle to a warmer location, such as towing your vehicle.

➔ **Emergency Towing** P. 657

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda Sensing® has the following functions:

■ **The functions that do not require switch operations to activate**
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) P. 436
- Low Speed Braking Control P. 450
- Road Departure Mitigation System P. 456
- Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 504
- Auto High-Beam P. 186
- Blind Spot Information System P. 427
- Cross Traffic Monitor P. 531
- Parking Sensor System P. 526

■ **The functions that require switch operations to activate**
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 464
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 485
- Traffic Jam Assist P. 495

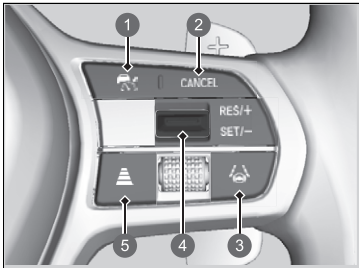
Honda Sensing®

Make sure that all the tires are of the same specified size, type, and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tires of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

Continued

■ Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/ Traffic Jam Assist



❶ Button
Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow.
Or press to cancel the system.

❷ CANCEL Button
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

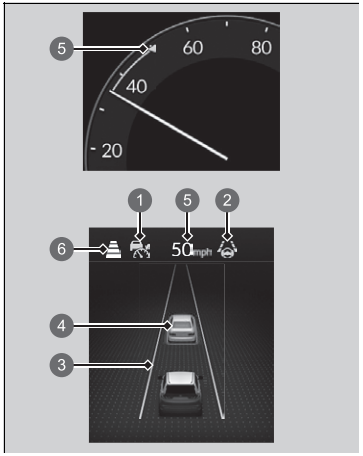
❸ LKAS Button
Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist.
Or press to cancel these systems.

❹ RES/+/SET/– Switch
Press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.
Press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch down to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

❺ Interval Button
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

■ Gauge Content

You can see the current state of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) and Traffic Jam Assist.



❶ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is on.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❷ Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is operating.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❸ Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- Green lines: The system is operating.
- White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
- Amber line: Lane departure is detected.

❹ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.
- Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green
- Outside of control target vehicle: Gray

❺ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.

❻ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 442

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

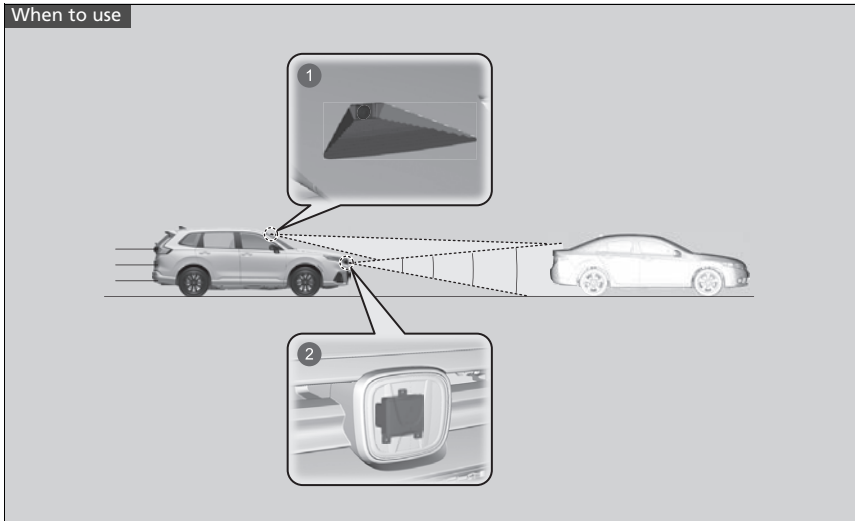
Radar Sensor P. 512

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera P. 510

How the System Works

When to use



❶ The front sensor camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
❷ The radar sensor is behind the Honda emblem on the front grille.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

How the System Works

The camera in the CMBS™ is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 442

Continued

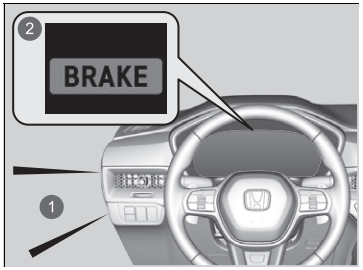
The CMBS™ activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 3 mph (5 km/h) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 18 mph (30 km/h) or less and there is a chance of a frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle when you turn left at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 62 mph (100 km/h) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
  - An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
  - A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.
  - A vehicle approaching from the side in front of you.

The CMBS™ will be canceled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.

The CMBS™ may also be canceled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

■ **When the system activates**



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).

❶ Audible Alert
❷ Visual Alerts

You can change the distance (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

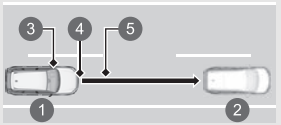
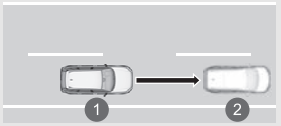
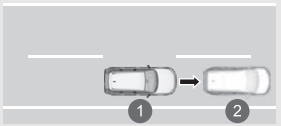
➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

When in **Long**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

Continued

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS™		
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	The visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing. ▶ The collision warning distance can be changed. ➔ **Customized Features** P. 326	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

❶ Your Vehicle
❷ Vehicle Ahead
❸ **Long**
❹ **Normal**
❺ **Short**

■ CMBS™ On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 132
Safety Support P. 140

The CMBS™ is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

CMBS™ On and Off

You cannot turn the CMBS™ off while driving.

The CMBS™ may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions:

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations P. 442

When the CMBS™ is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be canceled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tire pressure/TPMS and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

■ CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the radar sensor or camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS™ to operate improperly.

Front Sensor Camera P. 510
Radar Sensor P. 512

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, moving bicycles or roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles [including motorcycles], pedestrians, moving bicycles, or other vehicles may not be detected).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving through an area where there are objects that strongly reflect radio waves onto vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor behind the Honda emblem on the front grille gets dirty.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

Continued

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the system due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, vehicles approaching from the side, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle (including motorcycles) and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- A bicycle or sideways-facing vehicle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognizing them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a carried object.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3.3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 6.6 feet (2 meters) in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle is approaching diagonally from the side.
- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tanker truck or a truck without a load) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**

- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as trucks that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle approaching from the side is significantly large.
- When the vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians, or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left at an intersection, etc.)*1
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tires, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the radar and camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, vehicle approaching from the side, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) that has an extremely high minimum ground clearance is ahead of you or approaching from the side.
- When turning left or right and your turn signal is not activated in the same direction you are turning.

*1 : When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left, the CMBS™ is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

Continued

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS™ may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on when:

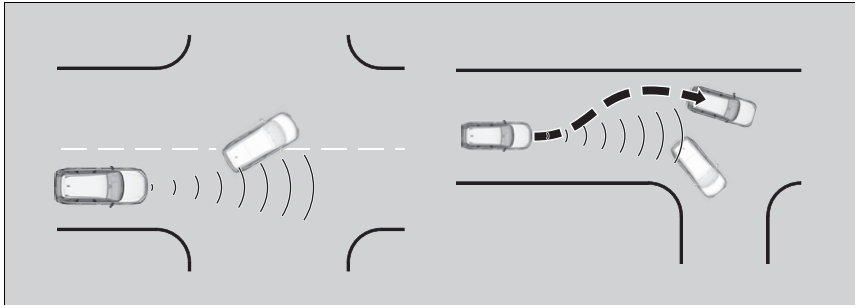
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The front of the camera or radar sensor behind the Honda emblem is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (incorrect tire size, flat tire, etc.).

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS™ to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

With Little Chance of a Collision

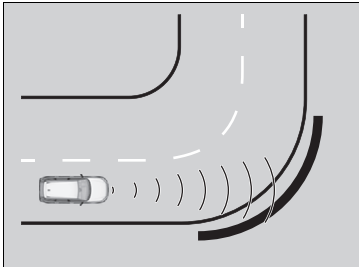
Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS™ may activate under the following conditions.
Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

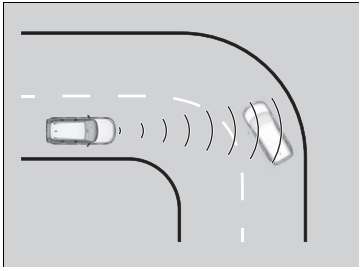


Continued

- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When you drive over roads with bumps, train tracks, or construction steel plates.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

- A vehicle approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is turning left or right.
- You pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle that is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle turns left or right while approaching your vehicle from the side.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or bicycle enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you.
- You pass close by the side of a vehicle parked on the street.

Low Speed Braking Control

Using sonar sensors located on the front and rear bumpers and front grille, this system can detect if there is danger of a potential collision with a wall or other obstacle during normal driving or when the accelerator pedal is depressed with too much force. The system then assists in avoiding collisions and reducing damage from impact through assistive braking and/or assistive driving power suppression.

Low Speed Braking Control

⚠WARNING

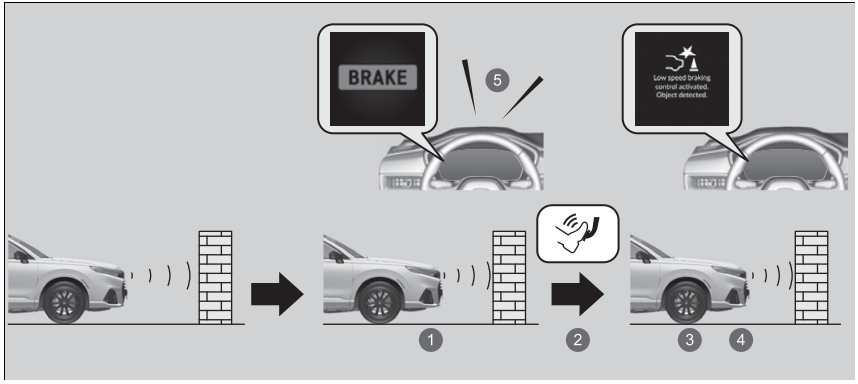
The Low Speed Braking Control System cannot avoid all collisions and may not reduce damage in each situation where the accelerator is mistakenly or aggressively pressed. Overreliance on the system may result in a collision with serious injury or death. Always check your surroundings, your shift position, and your pedal use. Driver remains responsible for safely operating the vehicle.

If the Low Speed Braking Control activates in a situation where you do not want automatic brake application (such as when the vehicle is between two railroad crossing gates), simply press the brake pedal to deactivate the system and then continue to drive as intended.

How the System Works

Assistive braking

Assistive braking provides a visual and audible alert when the vehicle is moving between approximately 1 and 6 mph (2 and 10 km/h) and there is the possibility of a collision with a detected wall or other obstacles, as well as providing assistance with braking.



1. The vehicle applies brake
2. Driver depresses brake pedal
3. Stop
4. Release brake after maintaining stationary position
5. Audible Alert

If only the rear sensors are turned off using the parking sensor system, the assistive braking will not work when reversing.

Customized Features P. 326

Continued

Low Speed Braking Control

For directions on the proper handling of the sonar sensors, please refer to the following page.

Sonar Sensors P. 513

The vehicle will release the brake and start moving a few seconds after the system is activated. To keep the vehicle stopped, keep the brake pedal depressed or put the transmission into P.

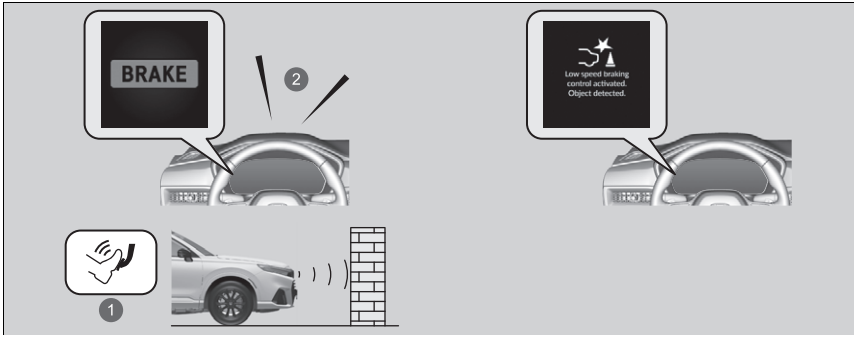
In order to prevent the system from activating when not needed, always turn it off during vehicle maintenance; when loading on ships, trucks, and so on; when using a chassis dynamometer or free rollers for inspection; or when washing the car in conveyor type car wash machine.

If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the Low Speed Braking Control System may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

Customized Features P. 326

■ Assistive driving power suppression

When the vehicle is stopped or moving at less than 6 mph (10 km/h) and there is an obstacle such as a wall detected near the front or back of the vehicle, if the accelerator pedal is depressed more than necessary, the system will inform you with a visual and audible alert. At the same time, the system will prevent sudden forward or backwards movement by limiting the output of the power system, then assistive braking will activate when you get closer to the obstacle.



❶ Accidental depression of the accelerator/Limiting the output of the power system
❷ Audible Alert

Assistive driving power suppression will not activate in the following situations.
When moving forward:
- When on a steep slope or the shift position is in [P], [R], or [N].

When reversing:
- When on a steep slope or the shift position is in a position other than [R].

If only the rear sensors are turned off using the parking sensor system, the assistive driving power suppression will not work when reversing.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display P. 132
Safety Support P. 140

The system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

System On and Off

The Low Speed Braking Control system may temporarily turn off after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
The system will automatically turn ON after the vehicle has been moving at over 12 mph (20 km/h) for some time.
If the system does not turn on, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

■ Conditions for Cancellation

Conditions for assistive driving power suppression:
- When the accelerator is no longer depressed.
- When the accelerator is depressed for approximately four seconds.
- When the brake pedal is depressed.

Conditions for assistive braking cancellation:
- A certain amount of time has passed since activation.

Conditions for Cancellation

After Low Speed Braking Control has activated once, it will not activate again for the same obstacle.
It can be activated again after driving for a certain distance after last activation.

Low Speed Braking Control activates separately when moving forward and reversing. (For example, if it activates when moving forward, it can be activated again immediately if reversing.)
However, if assistive braking has been activated, in order to activate assistive driving power suppression again, it is necessary to drive for a certain distance to reset the system.

■ Low Speed Braking Control System Conditions and Limitations

The system may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

■ Examples of obstacles the sonar sensors cannot detect
- Obstacles that do not reflect sound waves well, such as people, snow, cloth, sponges, etc.
- Thin obstacles such as fences, bicycles, sign posts, etc.
- Short or small obstacles.
- Obstacles immediately in front of the bumper.
- Obstacles that are not perpendicular to the ground.
- Moving objects or obstacles that suddenly enter the road.

■ **Examples of situations where the sonar sensors cannot detect obstacles**
- The sonar sensors are dirty (covered by snow, water, mud, etc.).
- The vehicle is too hot or cold.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply when approaching the obstacle at an angle.

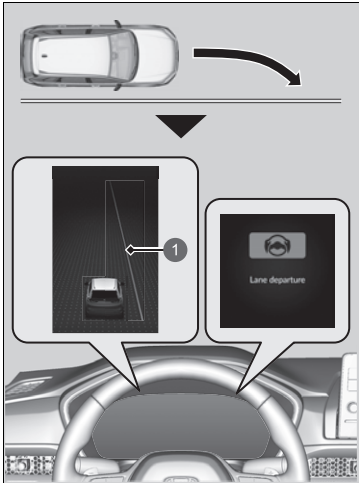
■ **Examples of other cases where the system may not work correctly**
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load or suspension modifications.
- Bad weather conditions such as heavy rain, fog, snow, sandstorms, etc.
- The ambient temperature/humidity is too high or low.
- When going down a very steep slope.
- When driving off-road such as on dirt, grass or rocks.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).

■ **Situations where the system may activate even without risk of a collision**
- When passing through short or narrow gates.
- When driving on uneven surfaces, grassy areas, or places with steps.
- When a sloped pillar or wall is protruding from a high position.
- When there are obstacles next to the road.
- When driving toward flags, curtains, tree branches, railroad crossing bars, etc.
- When driving on flooded roads.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

■ How the System Works



1 Amber Line

The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle.
If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles. In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.
Customized Features P. 326

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.
Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder), an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed, or road conditions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
Front Sensor Camera P. 510

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:
Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations P. 460

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

Road Departure Mitigation System

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into a grass or gravel road shoulder) or oncoming vehicle.

Customized Features P. 326

Continued

How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on.

Indicators P. 106

The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 132
➡ **Safety Support** P. 140

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you turn the power system on.

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only**, the system does not operate the steering wheel.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tire pressure/TPMS and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through an exit or an interchange.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognized correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

Continued

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the cargo area or rear seats.
- Tire chains are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

■ **Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles**

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognizing it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**
- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

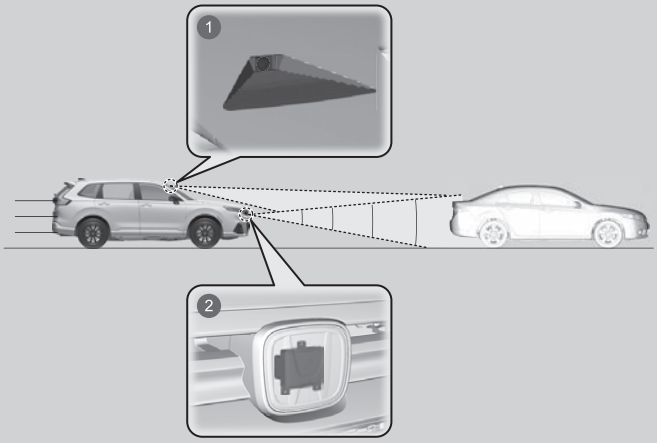
■ **With Little Chance of a Collision**
The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.
- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



❶ A front sensor camera is located behind the rearview mirror.
❷ The radar sensor is behind the Honda emblem on the front grille.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on expressways or freeways and in good road and weather conditions.

⚠WARNING

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

⚠WARNING

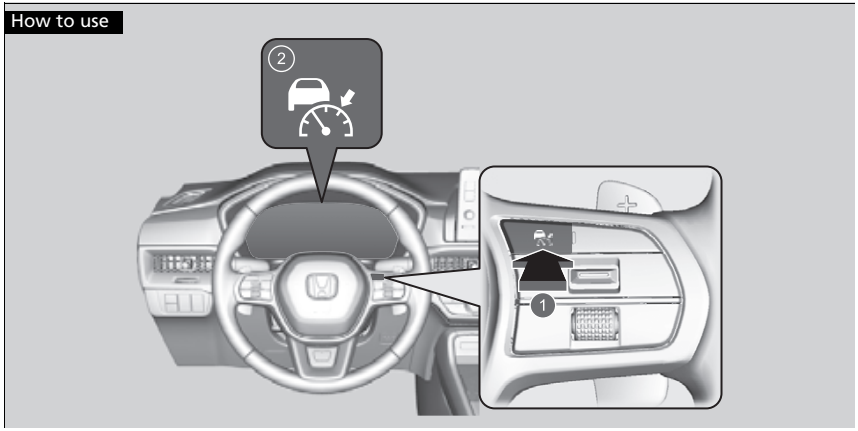
Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 90 mph (145 km/h).
  No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D.

■ How to activate the system



❶ Button
Press the button on the steering wheel.
❷ (white) is on in the gauge.
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

While in **ECON** mode or **EV** mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

When using ACC with Low Speed Follow, **EV** mode may automatically be canceled if your vehicle speed is 78 mph (125 km/h) or higher.

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.
➡ **Radar Sensor** P. 512

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 510

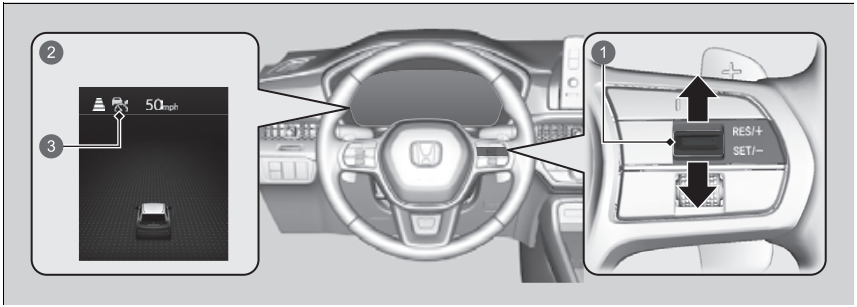
The radar sensor for ACC with Low Speed Follow is shared with the Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™).
➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 436

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.
➡ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 472

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

Continued

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



❶ **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
Up or down
❷ On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
❸ (green)

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

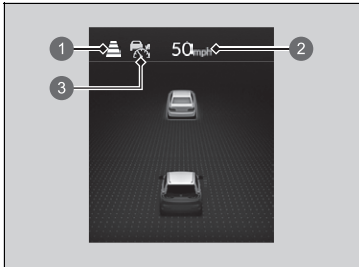
- On roads with frequent lane-change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tire pressure/TPMS and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

When driving at about 25 mph (40 km/h) or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the switch, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

When driving slower than about 25 mph (40 km/h): If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the switch fixes the set speed to about 25 mph (40 km/h) regardless of current vehicle speed. If the vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars, and set speed appear on the gauge.

❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed
❸ (green)

To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or audio/information screen between mph and km/h.
Speed/Distance Units P. 142
Customized Features P. 326

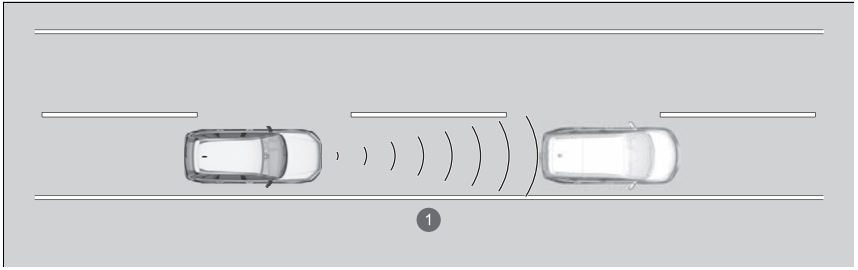
Continued

■ When in Operation

■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

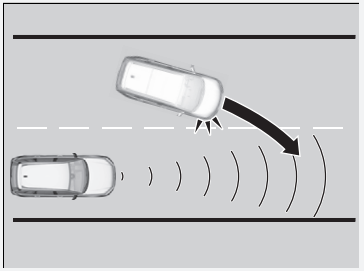
To Set or Change Following-interval P. 477



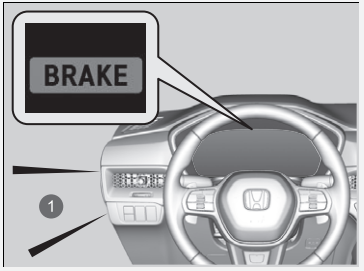
1 ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 394 ft. (120 m)

When in Operation

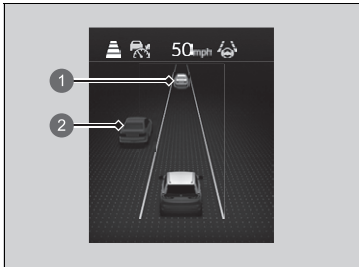
If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



1 Audible Alert



A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

❶ Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green

❷ Outside of control target vehicle: Gray

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

Customized Features P. 326

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 472

Continued

■ There is no vehicle ahead

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

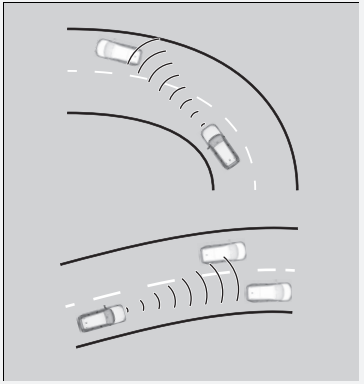
While driving down steep hills, ACC with Low Speed Follow brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

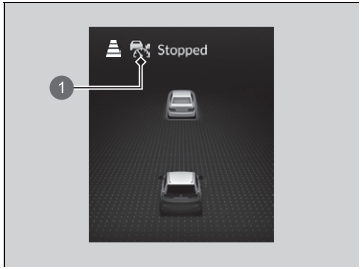
When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



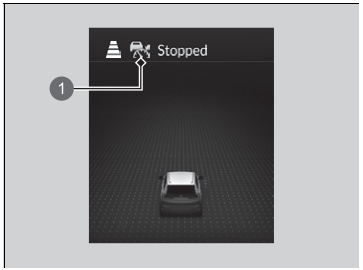
- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the previously set speed.

❶ (green)



If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depressing the accelerator pedal will resume operation of ACC with Low Speed Follow within the prior set speed.

❶ (green)

Continued

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 510
➔ **Radar Sensor** P. 512

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- When nearby radio wave emitting devices such as other automotive radar sensors.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

■ Vehicle conditions

- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The area around the front grille is obstructed by dirt, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- Tire chains are installed.

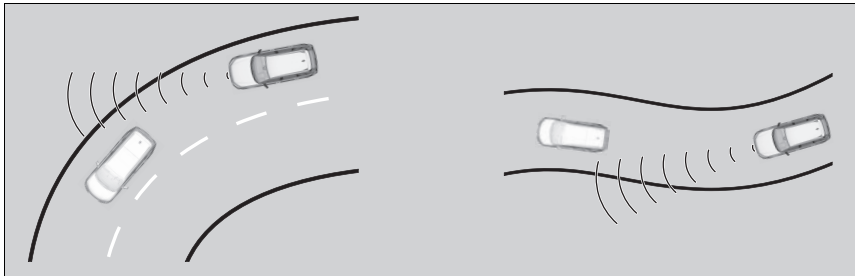
ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the front grille is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the button and take your vehicle to an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

■ **Detection limitations**

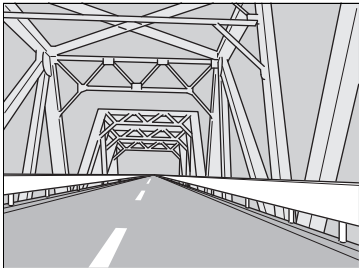
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- You accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- There are animals in front of your vehicle.
- You drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.



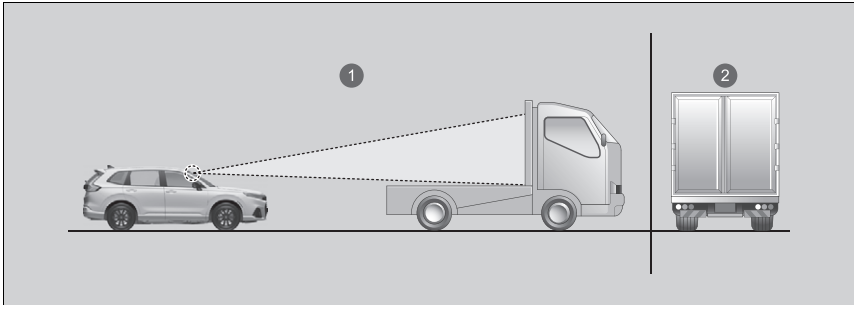
- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

Continued

- Driving through a narrow metal bridge.



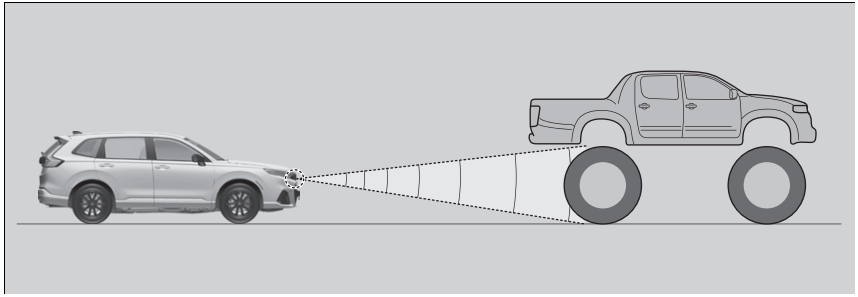
- The vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- The vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.



❶ Sensor detects upper section of an empty carrier truck.
❷ Panel truck, tanker truck, etc.

- Your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

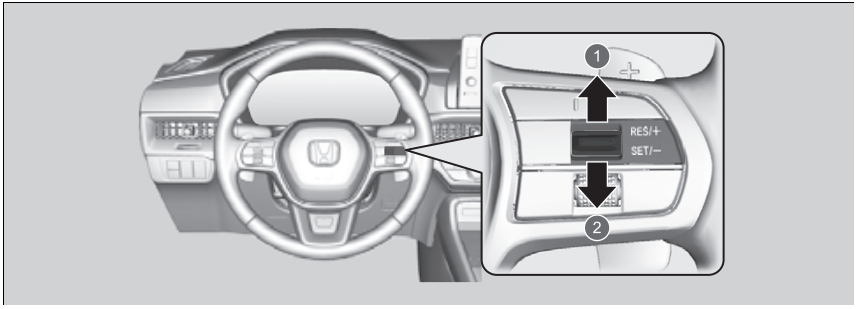


- When the radar and camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognizing it.

Continued

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+/SET/–** switch on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

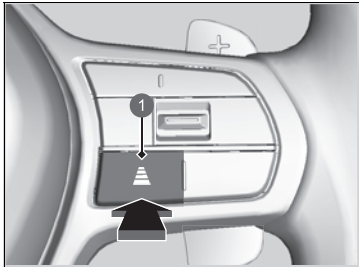
- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+/SET/–** switch pressed up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+/SET/–** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-interval



❶ Interval Button

Press the Interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through Furthest, Far, Mid, and Nearest following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

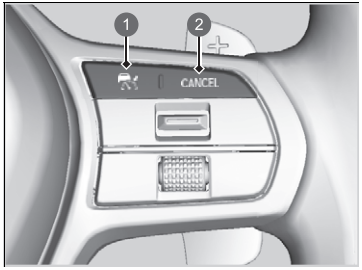
Continued

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the Nearest, Mid, Far, and Furthest following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-Interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		50 mph (80 km/h)	65 mph (104 km/h)
Nearest		83 feet 25 meters 1.1 sec	100 feet 31 meters 1.1 sec
Mid		110 feet 33 meters 1.5 sec	137 feet 42 meters 1.5 sec
Far		154 feet 47 meters 2.1 sec	200 feet 61 meters 2.1 sec
Furthest		213 feet 65 meters 2.9 sec	282 feet 86 meters 2.9 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

To Cancel



❶ Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

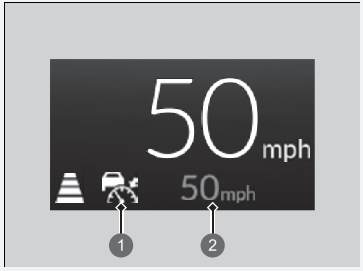
To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in gray) by pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in gray.

When pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.

If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up, but no prior set speed (in gray) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



❶ (white)
❷ Prior Set Speed (gray)

Continued

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor behind the Honda emblem on the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA®, CMBS™, or Low Speed Braking Control is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.

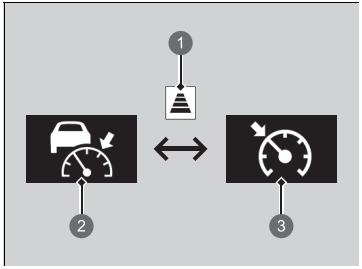
The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

To Cancel

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

To Switch ACC with Low Speed Follow to Cruise Control



❶ Interval Button
❷ (white)
ACC with Low Speed Follow ON
❸ (white)
Cruise Control ON

Press and hold the interval button for one second. **Cruise mode selected** appears on the driver information interface for two seconds, and then the mode switches to Cruise.
The indicator comes on.
- Green: The system is on.
- White: The system is standby.

To switch back to ACC with Low Speed Follow, press and hold the interval button again for one second.

To Switch ACC with Low Speed Follow to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following-interval from a vehicle ahead of you.

You cannot switch ACC with Low Speed Follow to Cruise Control in the following situations:
- When the vehicle speed is set.
- When ACC with Low Speed Follow is not activated.

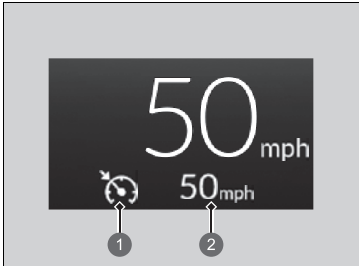
You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or audio/information screen between mph and km/h.

➡ **Speed/Distance Units** P. 142
➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

Continued

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed.
The moment you release the **RES/+/SET/–** switch, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The color of indicator changes from white to green and set speed appears on the gauge.



❶ (green)
❷ Set Vehicle Speed

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

■ When to use

Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
If you keep the **RES/+/SET/–** switch pressed up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

Continued

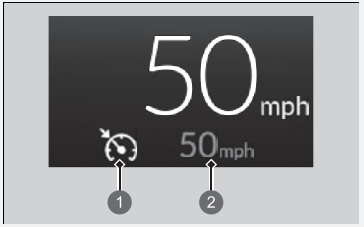
■ To Cancel

To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled cruise control, you can activate the cruise control with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in gray) by pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.
When you turn the cruise control off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in gray.
When pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up, the cruise control is activated with displayed speed.
If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up, but no prior set speed (in gray) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



❶ (white)
❷ Prior Set Speed (gray)

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When cruise control is canceled by pressing the button.

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

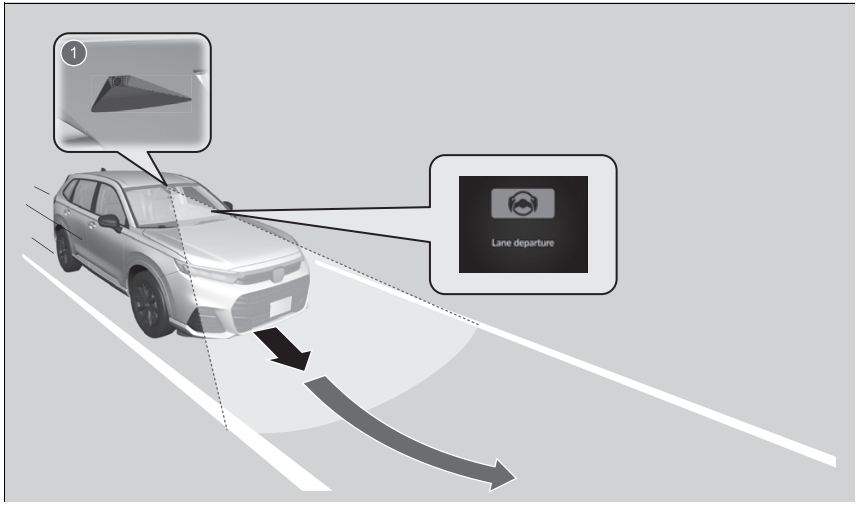
Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

■ Tactile and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



❶ Front Sensor Camera: Monitors the lane lines

Continued

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on expressways or freeways.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windshield and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 510

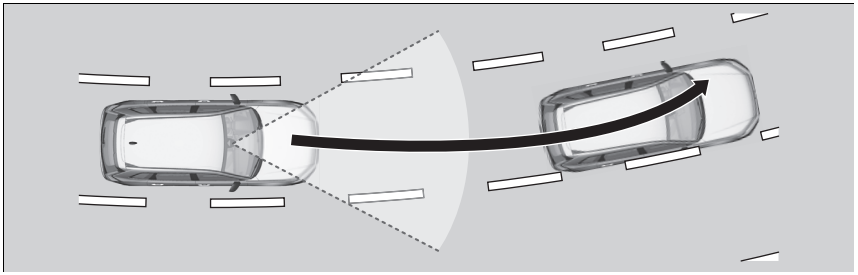
The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under certain conditions.

➡ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 491

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

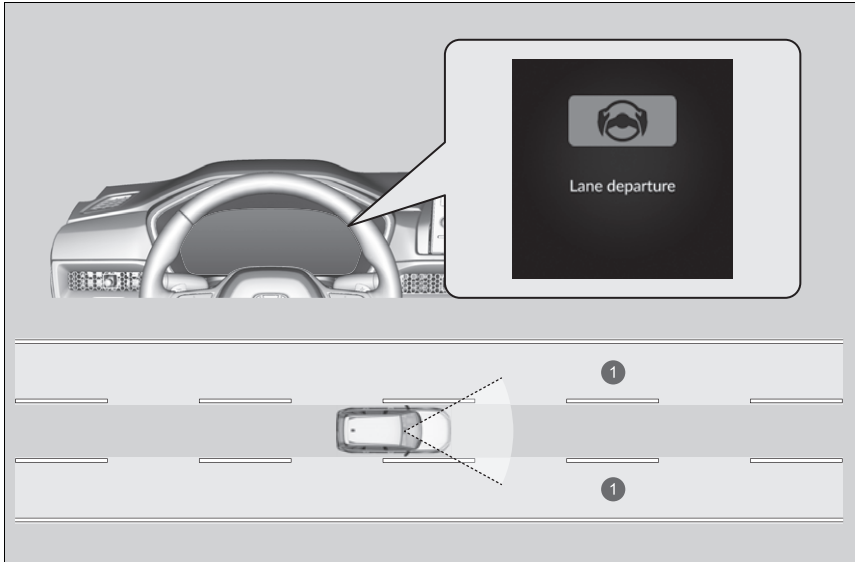


Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be canceled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



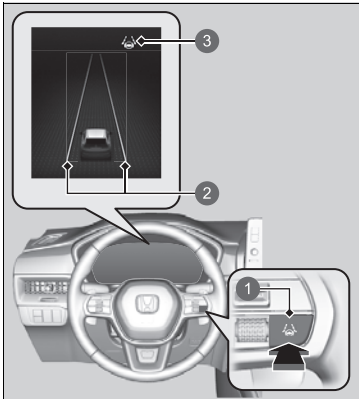
❶ Warning Area

Continued

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.
- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not suddenly depressed.

■ How to activate the system



❶ LKAS Button
❷ White lines
❸ LKAS Indicator (White)

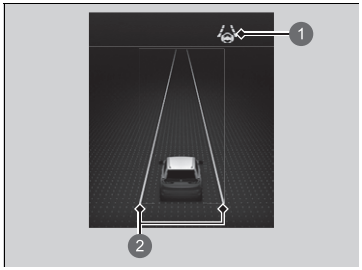
1. Press the LKAS button.
▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
The system is standby.
▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Follow the points below to properly activate the system:
- Always keep the windshield around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

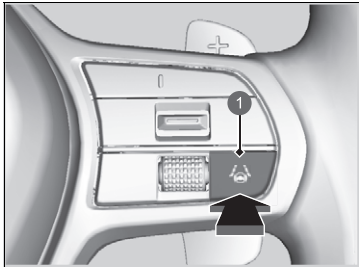
If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.



❶ LKAS Indicator (Green)
❷ Green lines

2. Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.
▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

■ To Cancel



❶ LKAS Button

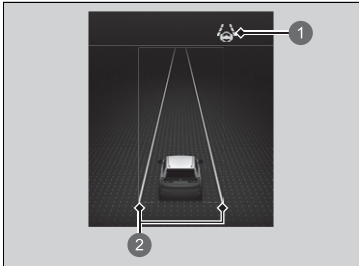
Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Continued

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or disappear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).



❶ LKAS indicator (white)
❷ White lines

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 94 mph (150 km/h).
- The ABS or VSA® system engages.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ The LKAS may be automatically canceled when:

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically canceled:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, is dirty.

The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the LKAS.
LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and LKAS may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

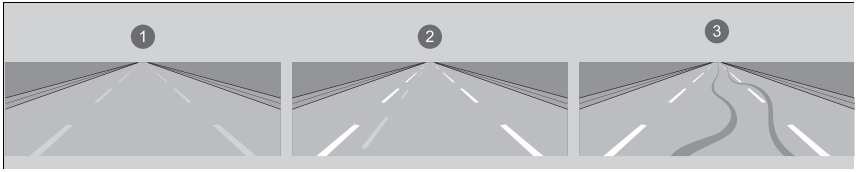
■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

Continued

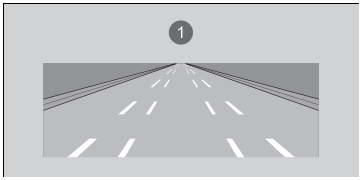
■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.



❶ Faded lines ❷ Duplicate lines ❸ Tire tracks

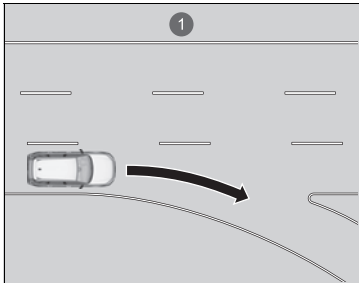
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognized correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through an exit or an interchange.



1 Lane void of lines at exit or interchange

Continued

■ **Vehicle conditions**

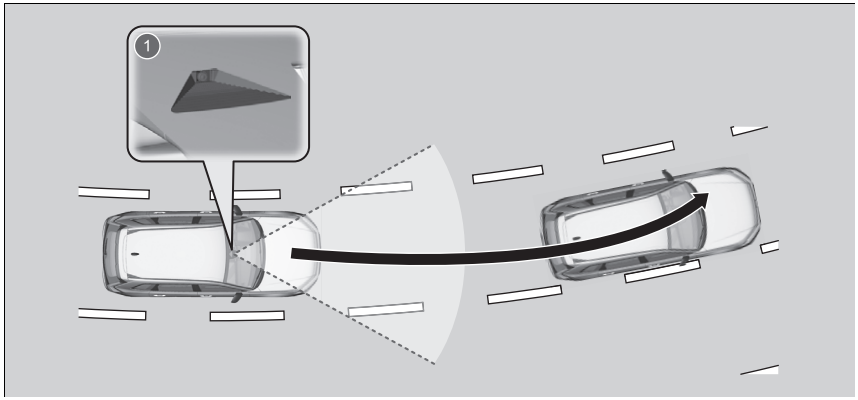
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the cargo area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tire chains are installed.

Traffic Jam Assist

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a camera mounted to the upper portion of the windshield to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the center of the detected lane.

■ How Traffic Jam Assist works

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the Traffic Jam Assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help keep your vehicle in the center of the lane.



1 Front Sensor Camera
Detects left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines

When you use the turn signal to indicate a lane change, Traffic Jam Assist is temporarily deactivated. It is reactivated once the vehicle is traveling in the center of the lane and the system has detected the traffic lane lines.

Continued

Traffic Jam Assist

Important Safety Reminders

Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on expressways or freeways.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 510

The Traffic Jam Assist only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Traffic Jam Assist may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

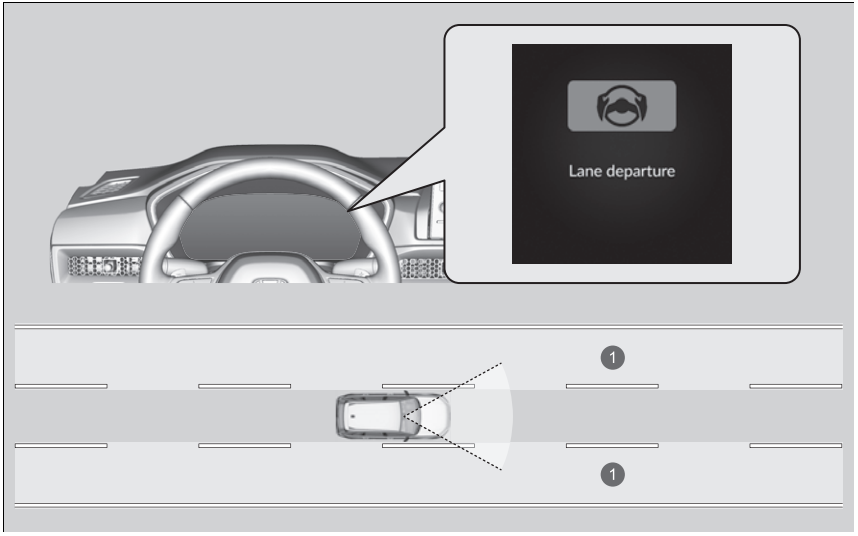
Traffic Jam Assist may not work properly under certain conditions:

➡ **Traffic Jam Assist: Conditions and Limitations** P. 500

When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily canceled.
The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with an audible alert as well as a warning display.



1 Warning Area

■ Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Traffic Jam Assist is activated when all of the following conditions exist:
- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- The vehicle is traveling between about 0 and 45 mph (0 and 72 km/h).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The shift position is in D.

Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:
- You are traveling on a road with sharp curves.
  ▶ The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
  ▶ The tires may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Refer to the following page for proper handling of the LKAS:

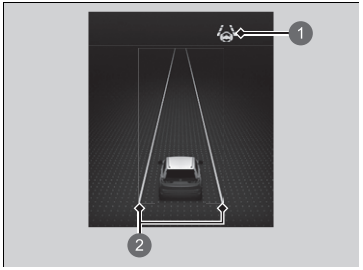
➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 485

Refer to the following page for steering buttons and displays:

➡ **Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow/Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist** P. 434
➡ **Gauge Content** P. 435

Continued

How Traffic Jam Assist Works



1 LKAS Indicator (Green)
2 Green lines

Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.

▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

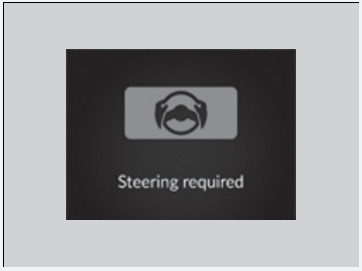
How Traffic Jam Assist Works

If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

In some cases the system cannot properly detect the traffic lane lines and, as a result, will not provide steering assistance.

➡ **Traffic Jam Assist: Conditions and Limitations** P. 500

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning below will appear.



If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning above has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be canceled.

■ Canceling Traffic Jam Assist

Press the LKAS button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically canceled when:

- The temperature of the camera is too high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, is dirty.

Upon cancelation, the lane lines will disappear from the screen and the beeper may sound.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

You can change the setting for the Traffic Jam Assist suspended beep on and off when you select the **Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep** on the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

Continued

■ Traffic Jam Assist: Conditions and Limitations

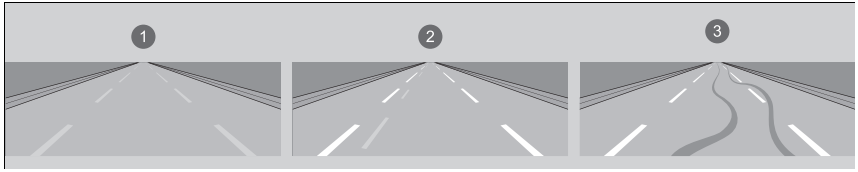
The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and Traffic Jam Assist may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at an intersection.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

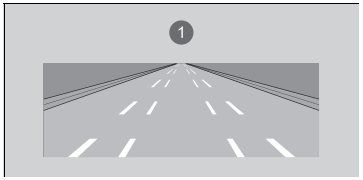
■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.



❶ Faded lines ❷ Duplicate lines ❸ Tire tracks

- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

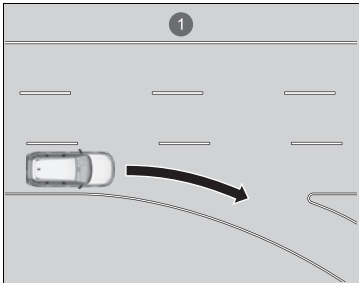


❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Continued

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognized correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through an exit or an interchange.



1 Lane void of lines at exit or interchange

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the cargo area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tire chains are installed.

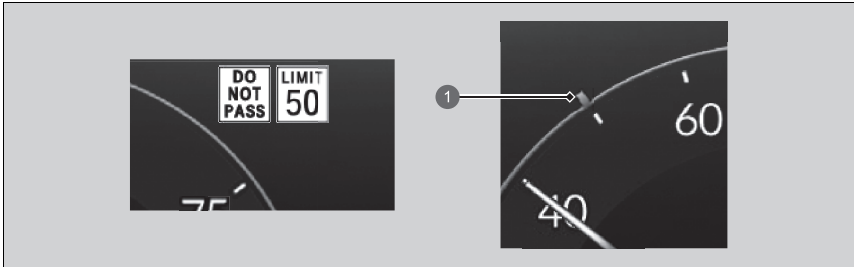
Traffic Sign Recognition System

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit your vehicle has just passed, showing it on the gauge.

■ How the System Works

When the camera located behind the rearview mirror detects traffic signs while the vehicle is being driven, the system displays recognized signs in your vehicle for a programmed time and distance. If a speed limit sign is detected and the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by a programmed threshold, the speed limit sign icon will blink.

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the sign icon will not be displayed.



❶ Speed Limit Sign

The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:

- The other designated limit is detected.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

Traffic Sign Recognition System

Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.
Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 510

You can turn the traffic sign recognition system on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

Traffic Sign Recognition System

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.
Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.
➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations** P. 506

The unit for speed limits (mph or km/h) varies from country to country. Just after entering a country whose unit differs to the one of the country from which you came, the Traffic Sign Recognition System may not work correctly.
➡ **Speed/Distance Units** P. 142
➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

Continued

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may incorrectly recognize, be slow to identify, or fail to recognize the traffic sign in the following cases.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.

■ Roadway conditions

- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the cargo area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tire chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the traffic sign recognition system malfunctions, appears on the gauge. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

■ **The position or the condition of the traffic sign**
- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

■ **Other conditions**
- When you are driving at a high speed.

Continued

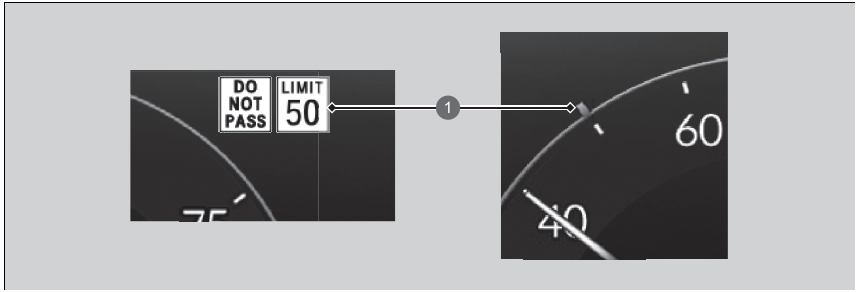
The traffic sign recognition system may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases.

▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.

- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, school zone, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric signs, numbers on the sign are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at an exit or an intersection between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in color or shape to recognized objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

■ Signs Displayed on the Gauge

Up to two traffic signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected. Speed limit, do not pass, stop, do not enter, and yield icons can be displayed on the gauge.
Any additional sign that indicates speed limit based on zones such as school zones can appear.

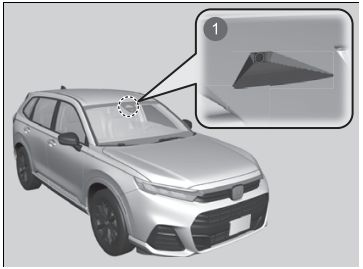


❶ Speed Limit Sign

Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), Road Departure Mitigation system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Traffic Jam Assist, Traffic Sign Recognition system, and Auto High-Beam, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



1 Front Sensor Camera

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Sensor Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the hood, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windshield, have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Front Sensor Camera

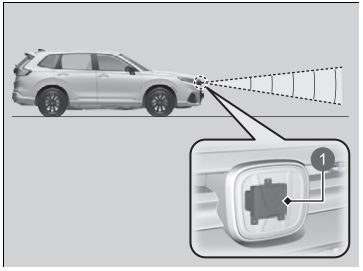
If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windshield is clean.
  Clean the windshield if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Radar Sensor



❶ Radar Sensor

The radar sensor is behind the Honda emblem on the front grille.

Radar Sensor

For the system to work properly, observe the following precautions.

- Always keep the emblem and front grille clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the emblem and front grille. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put any stickers or paint on the emblem or front grille.
- Do not scratch or damage the emblem or front grille.
- Do not replace the emblem, front grille, or bumper.
- Do not remove or disassemble the radar sensor.

Consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer if:

- The radar sensor cover is strongly impacted.
- The front grille or bumper needs to be repaired.

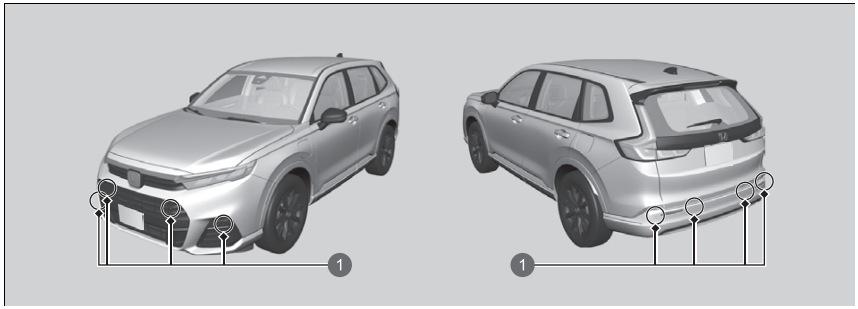
If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer if:

- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision.
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water.
- Your vehicle strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, slope, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor.

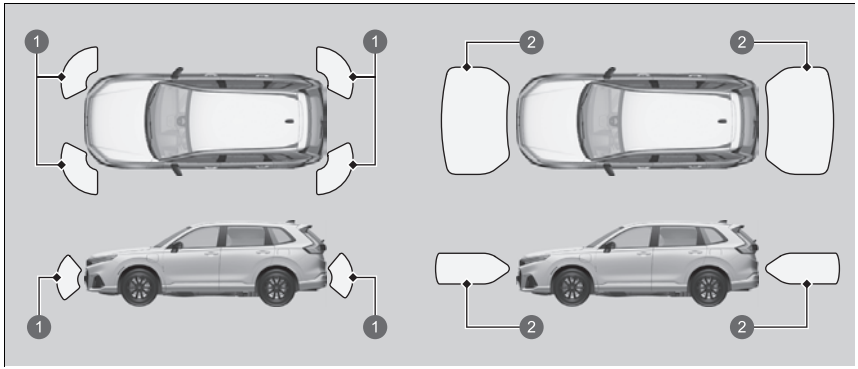
Sonar Sensors

■ Location and range of sensors

The sonar sensors are situated in the front and rear bumpers, and front grille.



❶ Sonar Sensors



❶ Corner Sonar Sensor Range
❷ Center Sonar Sensor Range

Sonar Sensors

For the sonar sensors to work properly, do not:
- Place stickers or other objects on or around the sensors.
- Hit the area around the sensors.
- Attempt to take apart any sensor.
- Put any accessories on or around the sensors.

Consult with an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer if:
- A sensor has been subjected to shock.
- Work needs to be done to the area around a sensor.

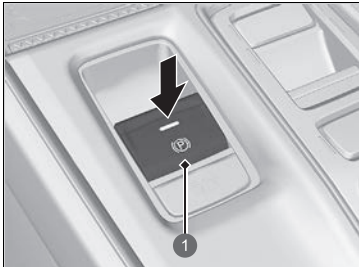
In the following cases, the sonar sensors may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer if:
- The front or rear bumper has made contact with a hill, parking block, curb, embankment, etc.
- The vehicle has been involved in a frontal or rear collision.
- The vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle.

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.

1 Electric Parking Brake Switch



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery charge, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

■ To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the motor compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead P. 635

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

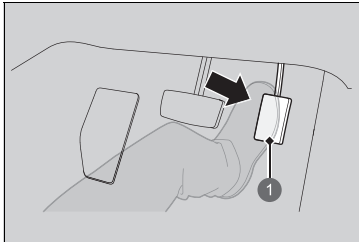
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature P. 517

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



1 Accelerator Pedal

Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the power system is turned off, while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off, while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

Continued

Parking Brake

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is traveling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- VSA® system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up and release the electric parking brake switch.

▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.

3. Pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.

4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.

▶ Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.

▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.

▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn the power system off.

▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.

▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.

▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.

▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Continued

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➡ **Brake Assist System** P. 524
➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 523

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power.
Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down.
To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector.
When the high voltage battery has fully recharged, regenerative braking may not be possible.

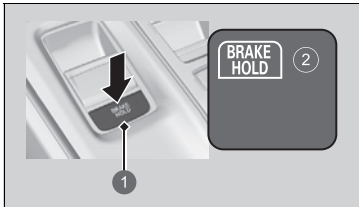
➡ **POWER Gauge** P. 125
➡ **CHARGE/DECEL Gauge** P. 125
➡ **Deceleration Paddle Selector** P. 409

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then turn the power system on. Press the automatic brake hold button.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

The system is in the previously selected on or off setting each time you fasten the driver's seat belt and turn the power system on.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

⚠WARNING

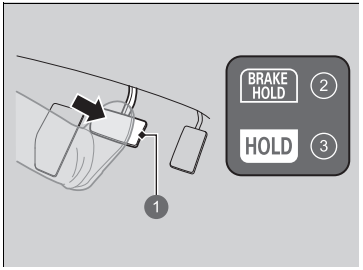
Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

Continued

■ Activating the system



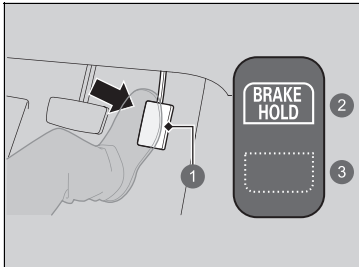
1. Brake Pedal
2. Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator On
3. Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Comes On

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in P or R.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.

▶ Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Canceling the system



Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than P or N. The system is canceled and the vehicle starts to move.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

❶ Accelerator Pedal
❷ Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator On
❸ Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Goes Off

■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.
Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

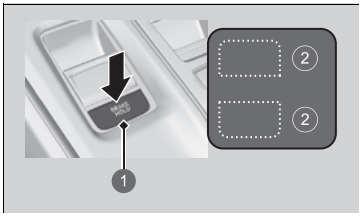
While the system is activated, you can turn the power system off or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

➡ **When Stopped** P. 525

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Continued

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



1 Automatic Brake Hold Button
2 Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator and Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Go Off

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:

- Press the automatic brake hold button.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:

- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

If you turn the power system off or unfasten the driver's seat belt while the automatic brake hold system is on, the automatic brake hold system will automatically turn off. In this case, when the driver's seat belt is fastened and the power system is turned back on, the automatic brake hold system will turn on without needing to press the automatic brake hold button.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tire of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop. It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tires are equipped with tire chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the motor compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been turned on and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly and come to a complete stop.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Change the shift position to [P].
▶ Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that [P] is shown on the shift position indicator.
4. Turn off the power system.

Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that [P] is shown on the shift position indicator.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to [P] before the vehicle stops completely.

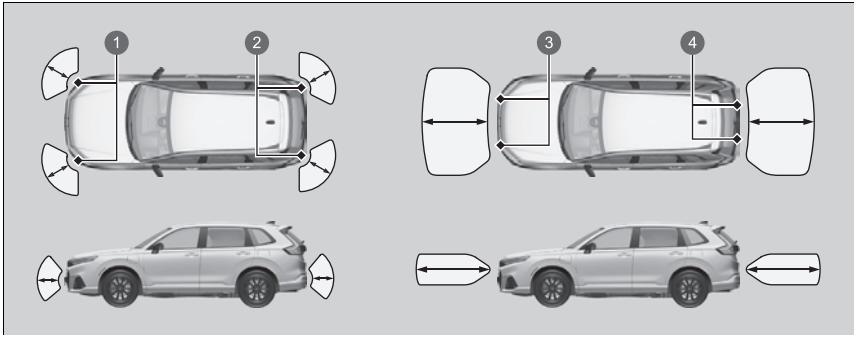
When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System

The corner and center sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface, and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ Sensor Location and Range



❶ Front Corner Sensors
❷ Rear Corner Sensors
❸ Front Center Sensors
❹ Rear Center Sensors

Parking Sensor System

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.
- If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

Customized Features P. 326

■ Parking Sensor System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

➔ **Switching the Display** P. 132
➔ **Safety Support** P. 140

The front corner, rear corner, and rear center sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The front corner and front center sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than P or R, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

Parking Sensor System

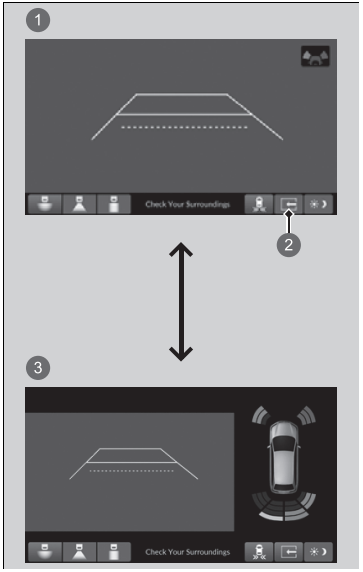
When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

You can turn the rear parking sensor system on and off using the audio/information screen.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 326

Continued

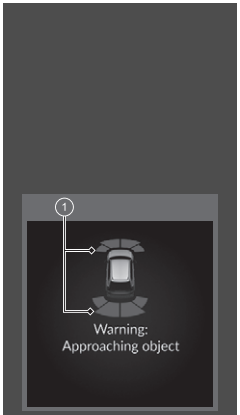
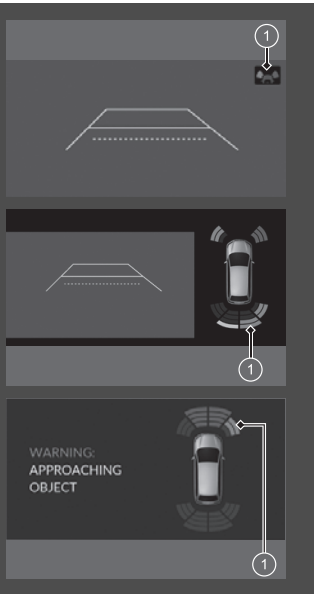
■ Screen Operation



You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.

❶ Split View Off
❷ Split Screen Tab
❸ Split View On

When the Distance Between Your Vehicle and Detected Obstacles Becomes Shorter

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface	Audio/Information Screen
	Corner Sensors	Center Sensors			
Moderate	—	Front: About 31-27 in (80-70 cm) Rear: About 43-27 in (110-70 cm)	Comes on*1/Blinks*2 in Yellow*3		
Short	About 24-18 in (60-45 cm)	About 27-23 in (70-60 cm)	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Amber		
Very short	About 18-14 in (45-35 cm)	About 23-19 in (60-50 cm)			
Continuous	About 14 in (35 cm) or less	About 19 in (50 cm) or less	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Red		

*1: On the driver information interface
*2: On the audio/information screen
*3: At this stage, only the center sensors detect obstacles
❶ Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.

Continued

To temporarily turn off the beeper, press the right selector wheel while it is sounding. Temporary OFF will be canceled when the shift position is switched or the vehicle speed reaches 9 mph (14 km/h) or higher.

Cross Traffic Monitor

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Cross Traffic Monitor

⚠CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

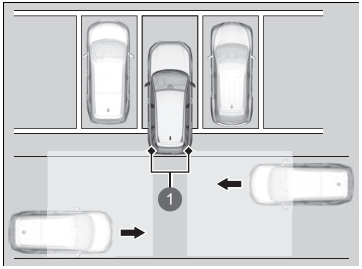
Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the Cross Traffic Monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

Continued

■ How the System Works



❶ Radar sensors:
Underneath the rear bumper corners

The system activates when:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 534
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 3 mph (5 km/h) or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Cross Traffic Monitor

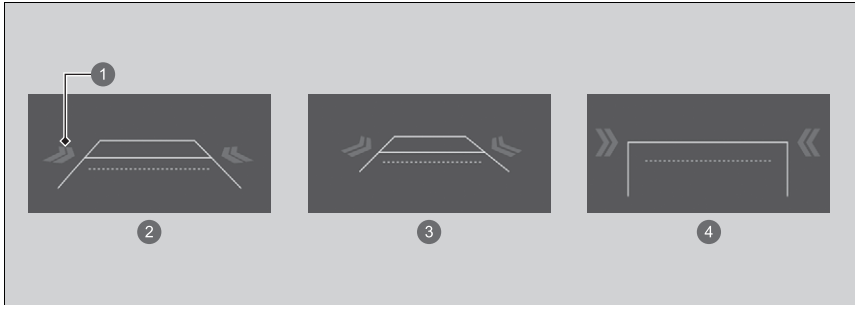
Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect or may delay alerting an approaching vehicle, or may alert without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:
- An obstacle, such as another vehicle or a wall near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of about 3 mph (5 km/h) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at a speed other than between about 6 mph (10 km/h) and 16 mph (25 km/h).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio waves transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing toward a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- When driving for long distances on a road in a trafficless area such as a desert.

If the rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

When the System Detects a Vehicle

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.



1. Arrow Icon
2. Normal View
3. Wide View
4. Top Down View

When the System Detects a Vehicle

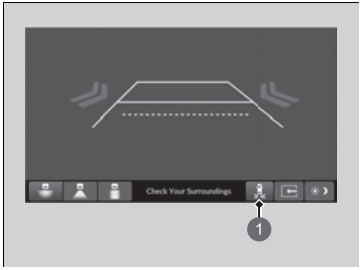
If the [R] on the lower right changes to [R] in amber when the transmission is in [R], mud, snow, ice etc. may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily canceled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the [R] comes on when the transmission is in [R], there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in [R], there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system.
Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the Cross Traffic Monitor icon.

You can also switch the system on and off from the customized features on the audio/information screen.

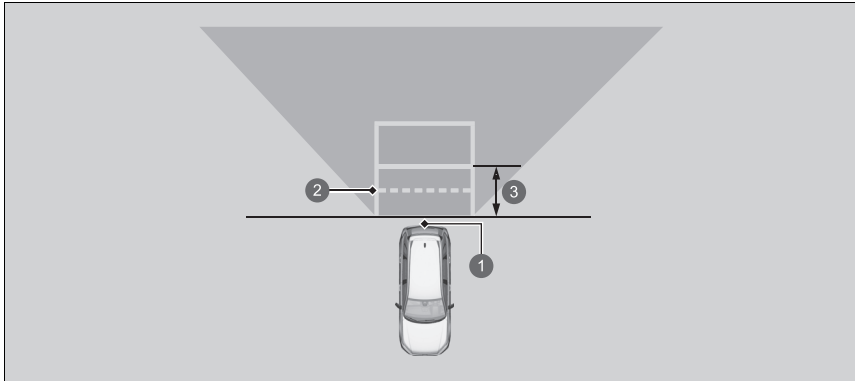
Customized Features P. 326

❶ Cross Traffic Monitor Icon

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.
The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



❶ Camera
❷ Tailgate open range
❸ Approx. 39 inches (1 m)

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display, which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

The rear camera view is displayed prior to the audio/information screen.

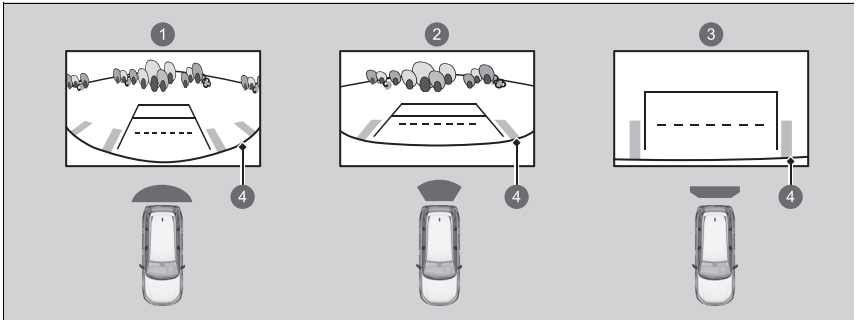
If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 326

Fixed Guideline
ON: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
OFF: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
ON: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
OFF: Guidelines do not move.

Continued

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



❶ Wide View Mode
❷ Normal View Mode
❸ Top Down View Mode
❹ Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned the power system off, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into R within 10 seconds after you took it out of R, Top down view mode will be activated.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the audio/information screen while the shift position is in R, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

Fuel Information

The hydrogen fuel receptacle is located on the driver's rear side of the vehicle.

■ **Fuel requirement**

Compressed hydrogen gas

■ **Hydrogen supply pressure: 70 MPa (10,153 psi) (at 59°F [15°C])**

■ **Hydrogen filling amount*1: Approximately 9.5 lbs (4.3 kg) (at 70 MPa [10,153 psi])**

*1: A measured value when refueled at a hydrogen station with 70 MPa (10,153 psi) of supply pressure compliant with the SAE (J2601) fueling protocol.

■ **Hydrogen tank capacity: 29.83 US gal (112.9 L) (at 70 MPa [10,153 psi])**

■ **Hydrogen filling station**

To completely fill the hydrogen tank, you need to use a hydrogen filling station that has an H70 dispenser, which is capable of supplying pressures of up to 10,153 psi (70 MPa).

Refueling the vehicle is only possible if the pressure inside the hydrogen tank of the vehicle does not exceed the supply pressure of the filling station.

If you use an H35 dispenser, you will be able to fill only half of the tank.

Refueling

⚠WARNING

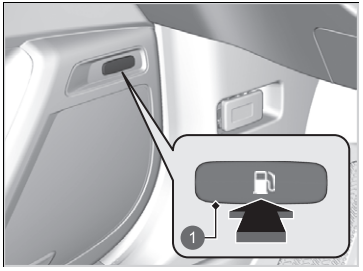
When refueling hydrogen gas, keep sources of fire, such as a lit cigarette, away from the vehicle. As hydrogen gas is highly flammable, it may cause a fire or explosion. Be sure to turn the power system to OFF to stop the FC stack operation.

NOTICE

If improper hydrogen gas is used, the FC stack will be damaged. Always refuel at authorized hydrogen filling stations.

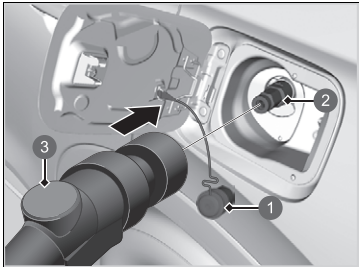
Hydrogen gas is colorless, odorless, very light, and flammable. Also, its burning flame is difficult to detect by sight.

How to Refuel



❶ Hydrogen Fuel Lid Release Button

1. Stop the vehicle with the hydrogen station dispenser on the left side of the vehicle.
2. Change the shift position to P.
3. Set the power mode to OFF.
4. Press the hydrogen fuel lid release button on the driver's door to open the hydrogen fuel lid.



❶ Dust Cap
❷ Hydrogen Fuel Receptacle
❸ Hydrogen Fueling Nozzle

5. Remove the dust cap from the hydrogen fuel receptacle inside the hydrogen fuel lid.
6. Connect the hydrogen fueling nozzle to the hydrogen fuel receptacle.
   ▶ Make sure to put the dust cap back on the receptacle to prevent contamination.
   ➡ **How to Close the Dust Cap and the Fuel Lid** P. 539

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Hydrogen is flammable and explosive.
You can be burned or seriously injured.
- Stop the motor, and keep sparks and flames away.
- Refuel only outdoors.

⚠WARNING

When refueling, touch something metal of the vehicle, etc. to discharge static-buildup from your body before opening the fuel lid.
Refueler must be a person who has discharged static electricity from his/her body.
If you re-enter the vehicle while refueling, your body may become recharged; you have to discharge the static-buildup from your body again.

The hydrogen fuel lid opens only when the power mode is in OFF and the shift position is in P.

➡ **If You Cannot Unlock the Hydrogen Fuel Lid** P. 659

How to Close the Dust Cap and the Fuel Lid

1. Put the dust cap back on the hydrogen fuel receptacle.
2. Shut the hydrogen fuel lid by hand.

How to Refuel

NOTICE

Do not touch the hydrogen fuel receptacle other than when refueling. Touching it carelessly may cause damage.

The filling amount may depend on ambient temperature.

It is normal to hear a whooshing sound during refueling.

How to Close the Dust Cap and the Fuel Lid

If the hydrogen fuel lid is not shut, a message appears on the driver information interface, and the power system cannot be turned on.

If the Close hydrogen fuel lid Warning Appears P. 647

Before Charging

Check the following items before you start charging your vehicle.

■ Safety Checklist

- Make sure to use a dedicated and properly grounded circuit.
  ▶ Have an electrician inspect the outlet you are using if you are unsure whether it meets these criteria.
- Make sure you plug the charging cable directly into the wall outlet dedicated to vehicle charging.
  ▶ Do not use extension cords, adapters, or multi-outlet plugs between the charging cable and the outlet.
- Make sure the charging cable is fully uncoiled before use.
- Make sure the control box, charging connector, and charging cable are free from any damage, including cracks or frays.
  ▶ If you find any damage to the devices, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
- Make sure the charging connector and inlet are clean.
  ▶ If you find any contamination or foreign object in the connector or inlet, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
- Make sure the charging cable is dry.
  ▶ Check that there is no water in the immediate area, and that your hands are dry.

Note: Outlet needs to be in good shape. Worn or damaged outlet will not make good contact with the plug. Ensure that the plug is fully inserted and does not come out of the outlet after installation. A loose connection will cause excessive heat build up within the plug and damage it.

Charging

⚠WARNING

Using a charging outlet that is powering other devices can cause a fire, seriously injuring you or others.
When using the charger, use a dedicated and properly grounded circuit. Consult an electrician if you are unsure whether your outlet meets these criteria.

⚠WARNING

Charging the High Voltage battery under the following conditions is a potential source of electric shock and fire, which can result in serious injury or death:

- Charging the battery during an electric storm.
- Using the charging connector or charging cable near water or handling with wet hands.
- Using a charger whose case is broken or cracked or whose cable is frayed or damaged.

Never charge the vehicle in any of the above situations.

Charging

⚠WARNING

Improper usage and handling of a charger can cause a fire, seriously injuring you or others.

- Always insert the plug fully into a properly rated and grounded wall outlet.
- Plug the charging cable directly to the wall outlet. Do not use extension cords or multi-plug adapters.
- Prevent the vehicle charging connector from becoming contaminated. Clean if necessary.

The charger requires a properly grounded and dedicated circuit that is protected by an overcurrent protection device (circuit breaker). We also recommend that a GFCI (ground-fault circuit interrupter) protected outlet be used to charge the vehicle. Follow the GFCI maker's installation instructions, or consult an electrician if you are not sure about installation requirements.

When the 12-volt battery is disconnected, vehicle charging is not possible. After reconnecting the 12-volt battery, turn the power system on, then turn it off. Confirm that charging is possible.

Turning on the Power P. 397

Charge the High Voltage Battery Using an AC Charger

Charge the High Voltage battery by using the AC charger.

Charging with	Suggested full charging time
AC 240 V (In case of 32 amp)	2.5 hours

- Charging time varies depending on remaining battery level, ambient temperature, and the charger used.
- An AC 120 volt charger may also be used to charge the vehicle. However, the required charging time will be longer compared to an AC 240 volt charger.
- The suggested full charging time in this table indicates the hours it may likely take for the High Voltage battery to be fully charged.
- You can check the estimated full charging time on the gauge.

Charging

⚠WARNING

Using a charger that is damaged or modified can cause electrical shock and fire, which can result in serious injury or death.

Never disassemble or modify the charger. If the charger becomes damaged, stop using it and consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

NOTICE

Do not charge the vehicle with a vehicle cover on. It can cause a malfunction and damage the vehicle or charging components.

When the battery warming system is activated, the battery may take longer to charge.

If the plug or connector is dirty or otherwise contaminated, carefully clean them with a dry clean cloth before use.

Do not wipe the metal part of the inlet and the charging connector. Also, if you are unable to clean the plug or connector, if the inlet is dirty, or if any are damaged or corroded, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV.

Charging

To avoid damage to the charger, take these precautions:

- Do not hit the charging connector components with a hard object or drop them on the ground.
- Do not pull, twist, tangle, drag, or step on the charging cable.
- Do not use or store near any sources of heat.
- Do not expose to liquids or use harsh chemicals to clean.

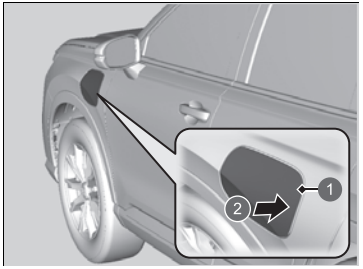
If a blackout or other electrical interruption occurs during vehicle charging, the vehicle will automatically resume charging once power is restored.

If the outside temperature is below -22F° (-30°C), the High Voltage battery may not start charging.

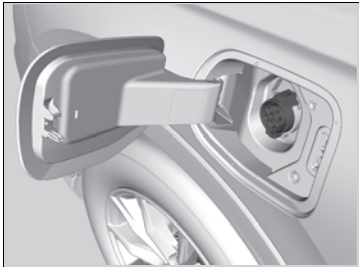
While charging, sound may not be heard from the radio due to electromagnetic noise.

Continued

How to Charge



1 Charge Lid
2 Press



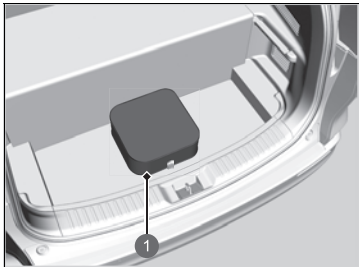
1. Put the transmission into P and turn the power system off.
   ▶ Make sure the power system is off.
2. Unlock the driver's door.
   ▶ The charge lid on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
   ▶ If you carry a keyless remote, you can open the charge lid even if the doors are locked.
3. Press and release the area indicated by the arrow to release the charge lid. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
4. Manually pull the charge lid to a fully open position.

How to Charge

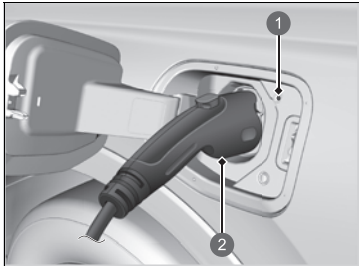
Be sure to follow the instructions and safety precautions provided with the AC charging equipment.

After the charging connector has been connected, slowly pull it outward to make sure it cannot be pulled out and is firmly in place.
▶Do not connect the charging connector to the inlet at an angle.
▶Do not move the charging connector up and down when connecting it.

The High Voltage battery may not be charged even if the charging connector is properly connected to the vehicle's inlet when the charging timer is set.
▶To start charging immediately, press and hold the charging connector release button.



❶ Charge Connector Bag

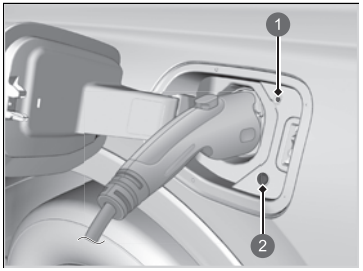


❶ Charge Indicator
❷ Charging Connector

5. Take out the charge connector bag.
6. Open the bag, and take the charging cable out.
▶ Do not tie or coil the cable when in use.
▶ Attach a 120 volt or 240 volt outlet adapter to the control box.
7. Insert the plug into a 120 volt or 240 volt wall outlet.
▶ Insert the plug completely until it stops.

8. Align and insert the charging connector into the vehicle's inlet.
▶ The charge indicator (white) stops blinking, and changes to slow blinking (blue) on when charging starts.
▶ Check that the blue indicator blinks, and changes to stays on, on the control box.

Continued



1 Charge Indicator
2 Unlock Button

■ When charging is completed

Press the unlock button, and wait without touching the charging connector until you hear the actuation sound of the motor running. After confirming that the actuation sound of the motor has stopped, disengage the charging connector.

The charge indicator (blue) stops sweep once charging is completed.
After about 15 seconds, the charge indicator goes off.

How to Charge

The charge speed slows down toward the completion of the battery charging.
When the High Voltage battery temperature is low, the charge speed may slow or it may not be fully charged.

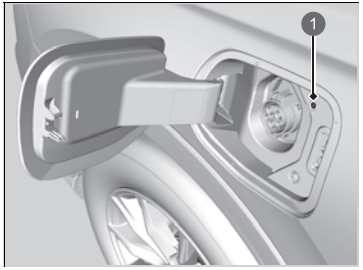
If you unplug the charging connector from the inlet, charging cancels automatically.

The charging connector can be disengaged when the doors are unlocked.
If the doors are locked, the charging connector cannot be disengaged unless you carry the keyless remote.
If you do not disengage it within 30 seconds of unlocking the doors, the charging connector will automatically relock.

If the charging connector does not disengage, do not disengage it forcefully, and follow the procedures mentioned in the following page.

➡ **If You Cannot Disengage the Charging/ Power Supply Connector** P. 661

■ Charge Indicator on the Vehicle Side



❶ Charge Indicator

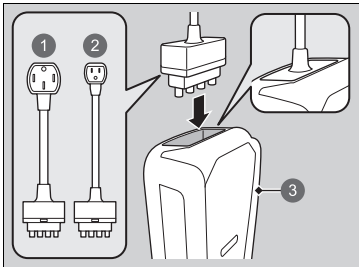
Shows the High Voltage battery charging status.

Charge indicator status	Explanation
Blinks (white)	• The charger is ready to charge the battery. • Charging is programmed to start using the timer. • The charging timer has been set.
Slow Blinks (blue)	• The battery is being charged.
Stays on (blue)	• Charging is complete.
Blinks once (blue)	• The battery has been fully charged and systems such as the battery heating system have been activated.
Blinks (red)	• There is a problem with the charging system. ▶ Charging does not start.
Stays on (red)	• The charging connector is not inserted correctly. ▶ When connecting the charging cable to the vehicle, insert the connector until it hits the back so that it does not tilt.
Stays on (white)	• The charger's stop button is pressed. • Charging is stopped by the charger timer.

Continued

■ High Voltage Battery Charger

■ Adapter

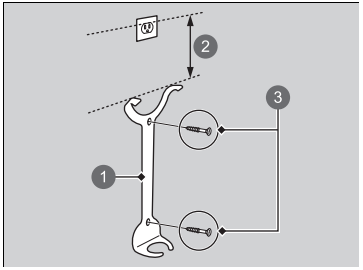


Make sure to attach the plug that matches the outlet securely to the control box as shown in the illustration, making sure there is no gap between it and the outlet.

▶ If the plug is not attached correctly, charging may not work properly.

1 240 V Adapter
2 120 V Adapter
3 Control Box

■ Wall Hanger Installation



1. Determine where to mount the wall hanger. It should be approximately 8.0 inch (20.0 cm) from the electrical outlet.
2. Drill 7/32 inch (5.5 mm) mounting holes that match the holes in the wall hanger.
3. Tighten the screws.

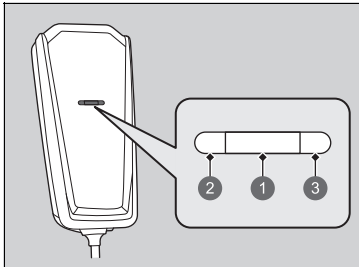
1 Wall Hanger
2 Approx. 8.0 inch (20.0 cm)
3 Screws

Wall Hanger Installation

NOTICE

- When mounting on drywall or a stone wall, use appropriate fasteners.
- Before drilling holes, make sure the control box fits properly into the hanger.

■ **Control box**



The charger indicators inform you of the status of the charger and the charging process.

❶ Indicator (Blue)
❷ Indicator (Amber)
❸ Indicator (Red)

Continued

■ **Charger Indicator Display**

You can check the status of the charger by referring to the indicator on the control box.
Respond as follows according to the indicator display.

Status of the Indicators			Status of Charger and the Charging Process
Amber	Blue	Red	
-	-	-	The charger is not turned on. ▶ Make sure the plug is securely inserted into the outlet. ▶ Make sure the breaker is turned on. ▶ Try using a different outlet to see if it will turn on.
Blink once	Blink once	Blink once	The charger performs an operation check when it is connected to an outlet. When the check is complete, the indicator comes on in blue.
Stay on	Stay on	Stay on	The charger is performing an error recovery operation. ▶ If the operation check occurs repeatedly for more than two to three minutes, unplug the charging connector from the vehicle and then unplug the charger from the outlet and try again.
-	Stay on	-	The charger is ready to charge the battery.
-	Slowly blinks	-	The battery is being charged.
Stay on	Blinks	-	Charging speed is limited due to overheating of the charger. ▶ Charge in a cooler place. ▶ Try charging with a different adapter or outlet.

Status of the Indicators			Status of Charger and the Charging Process
Amber	Blue	Red	
Blink once	Blinks	-	Charging speed is limited due to overheating of the adapter or plug. ▶ Charge in a cooler place. ▶ Try charging with a different adapter or outlet.
Stay on	-	-	There is an abnormality in the charger and charging will not start. ▶ Make sure the adapter and control box are connected properly. ▶ Charge in a cooler place. ▶ Try charging with a different adapter or outlet.
-	-	Stay on	There is an abnormality in the charger and charging will not start. Consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
-	-	Blink once	The adapter is faulty and charging will not begin. Consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
-	-	Blinks	A power leak has been detected. There is a risk of electric shock, so immediately turn off the breaker, stop using the product, and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

If you are still unable to charge normally after following the guidance above, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

Note: The charging equipment provided with this vehicle has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

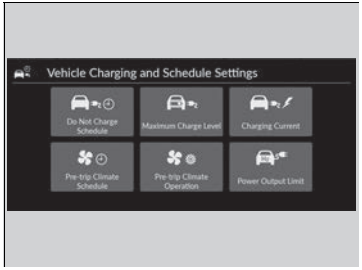
If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

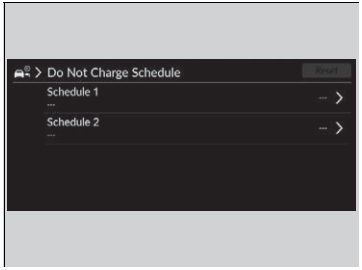
- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Using a Timer

You can set the timer for the High Voltage battery charge using the audio/information screen.
The vehicle begins charging except at the scheduled time when the charging connector is connected to the vehicle.

■ Charge Timer Setup





1. Select **Charge and Schedule**, then select **Do Not Charge Schedule**.
▶ The **Do Not Charge Schedule** cannot be set when you do not have GPS signal after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Move to an appropriate communication environment and set the schedule again.

2. Select **Schedule 1** or **Schedule 2**.

Using a Timer

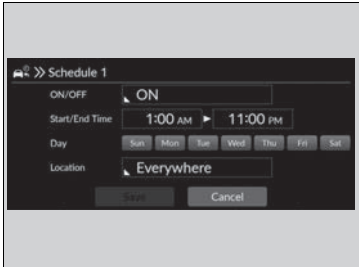
Even during the time set via **Do Not Charge Schedule** Setting, the battery may not be sufficiently charged when any of the following systems are activated.
- Battery Warming System
- Pre air conditioner

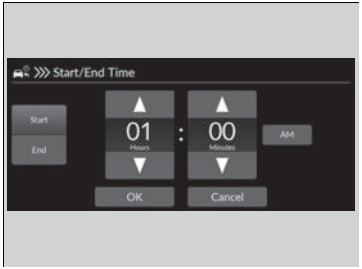
Charge Timer Setup

ON/OFF: Selects whether the schedule is enabled or disabled.
Start/End Time: The battery will be charged except at the time during which you have designated not to start.
Day: The battery will be charged except at the time during which you have designated not to start.
Location: Select **Home** or **Everywhere**.
▶**Home** may be selected when your vehicle is charged near your home.
▶**Everywhere** will be selected when the location of your home is not registered.

If the Home Location is not set in the navigation system, it will default to **Everywhere**.

Continued





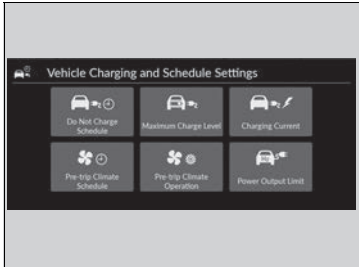
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**, then select settings for all items in order starting from the top.
4. Select **Save**.

Maximum Charge Setting

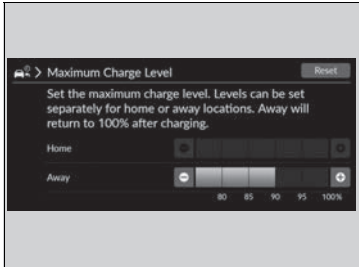
You can use the audio/information screen to change the maximum charge limit of the high voltage battery.

If the charge station is located up on a hill, you do not need to fully charge the vehicle at the station. This is because additional electrical energy can be stored in the High Voltage battery as the motor acts as an electric generator while going down a hill.

■ Settings on the Audio/Information Screen



1. Select **Charge and Schedule**.
2. Select **Maximum Charge Level**.



3. Select **Home** or **Away**.
▶ You can set the maximum charge setting based on the location of the vehicle when charging.
Home: The location set as home.
Away: Any other location.
4. Choose your preferred charge amount.

Settings on the Audio/Information Screen

To charge with the charge amount set in **Home**, you need to register the home position with navigation system.

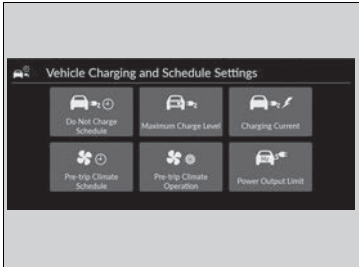
If the Home Location is not set in the navigation system, you can customize the **Away** setting only.

Charging Current Settings

You can use the audio/information screen to change the charging current of the high voltage battery.

▶ You can prevent the breaker from tripping when charging at home or while you are out.

■ Settings on the Audio/Information Screen



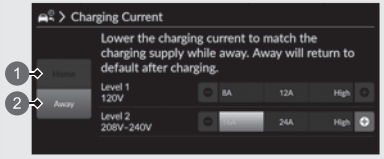
1. Select **Charge and Schedule**.
2. Select **Charging Current**.
3. Select **Home** or **Away**.
4. Select **Level 1 120V** or **Level 2 208V-240V**.

▶ You can set the charge current setting based on where you are charging your vehicle.

Settings on the Audio/Information Screen

If the Home Location is not set in the navigation system, you can customize the **Away** setting only.

5. Choose your preferred charge current.

Audio/Information Screen	Charging with		Suggested Full Charging Time*1
	**Level 1 120V**	**High** (Up to 15 amp)	8.5 hours (In case of 15 amp)
		12A	10 hours
		8A	15 hours
	Level 2 208V-240V	**High** (Up to 32 amp)	2.5 hours (In case of 32 amp)
		24A	3.5 hours
		16A	5 hours

*1: Charging time varies depending on conditions, such as the remaining battery level and the ambient temperature.

❶ **Home**: The location set as home
▶ You need to register the home position with navigation system.
❷ **Away**: Any other location

High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery level may get low. Keeping your vehicle's battery level low can shorten the battery life. To maintain the battery while the vehicle is not in use, recharge the battery at least once every three months. Plug in or turn on the power system, and keep it on for more than 30 minutes to allow the battery to recharge.

The High Voltage battery life can also be affected by ambient temperature. In particular, when it is cold outside, the vehicle's driving range on electric power can be reduced, and a longer battery charging time is required. In addition, parking in extremely hot or cold environments can accelerate battery drain.

To help extend the lifespan of the battery, it is recommended that you only fully charge the battery just before driving.

■ Battery Warming System

When the outside temperature is low, this system uses electricity from the charging device or the High Voltage battery to prevent the temperature of the High Voltage battery from dropping, while also maintaining driving functionality and the ability to turn the power system on.

When the vehicle is left unplugged or has not been used for four days or longer while plugged in, this system uses electricity from the High Voltage battery.

This may cause the remaining battery charge to become low, and, if plugged in, the charger may engage to recharge the battery.

High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery drains over time, and under some conditions, drains faster. When the battery life is shortened, this changes the vehicle's driving distance.

Battery Warming System

If the temperature of the High Voltage battery drops to –22°F (–30°C) or below, the power system will not start.

If the warming system operates, wait for the High Voltage battery to warm up. If it does not operate, move the vehicle to a warmer location.

We recommend that you set **Do Not Charge Schedule** Setting to **OFF** and plug in your vehicle when you will not use it for four days or longer.

➡ **Using a Timer** P. 553

Since the system does not operate when the 12-volt battery is removed, we do not recommend removing the 12-volt battery.

Improving Fuel Economy

Achieving fuel economy is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, standby time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the driver information interface.

- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy

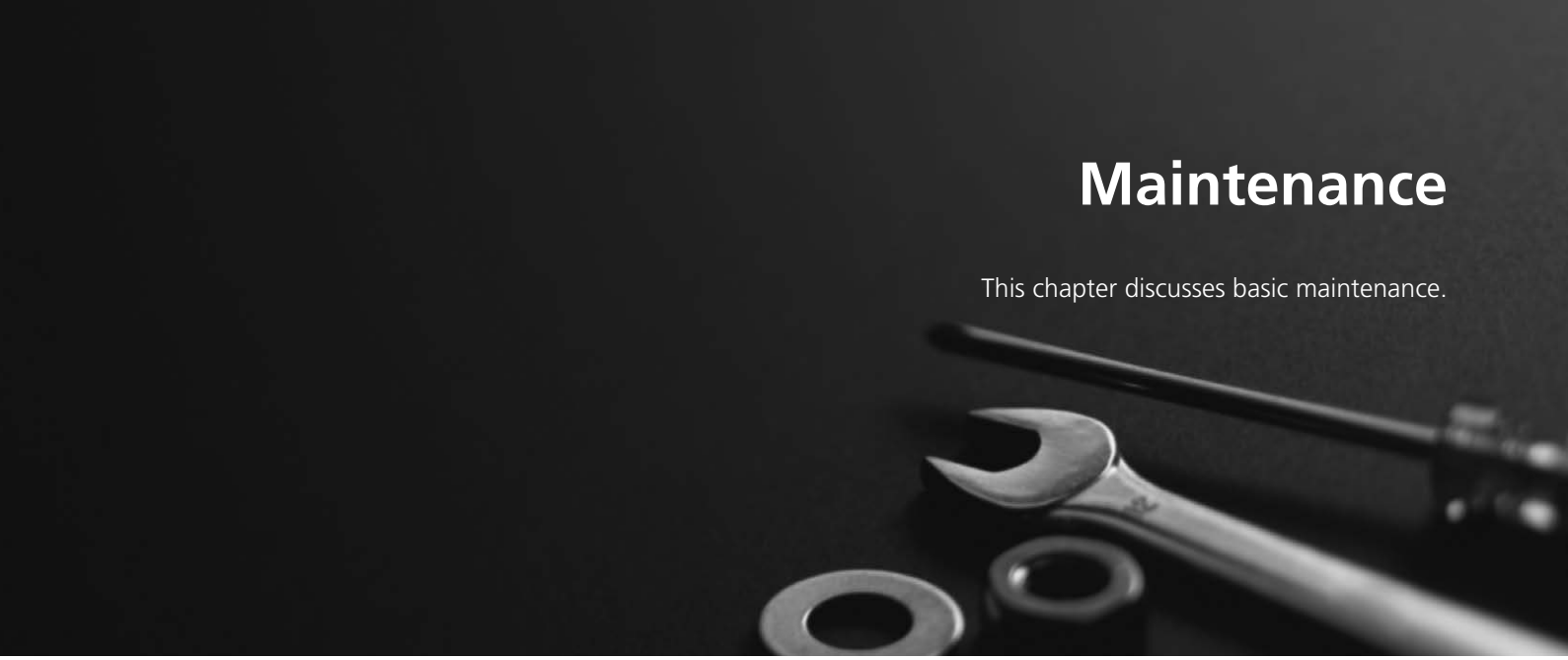
Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

Miles driven	÷	Kilogram of fuel	=	Miles per Kilogram
Kilometers driven	÷	Kilogram of fuel	=	Kilometers per Kilogram

This page intentionally left blank.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance
Inspection and Maintenance 562
Safety When Performing Maintenance 563
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 564
Maintenance Minder™ 565
Maintenance Under the Hood
Maintenance Items Under the Hood....572
Opening the Hood 573
High Voltage System Coolant..... 575
Transmission Fluid 577
Brake Fluid 578
Refilling Window Washer Fluid..... 579
Replacing Light Bulbs 580
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 584
Checking and Maintaining Tires
Checking Tires 588
Tire and Loading Information Label ... 589
Tire Labeling 590
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles) 592
Wear Indicators..... 594
Tire Service Life 594
Tire and Wheel Replacement..... 595
Tire Rotation 596
Winter Tires 597
12-Volt Battery 598
Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Remote Battery 600
Climate Control System Maintenance 602
Cleaning
Interior Care 603
Exterior Care..... 606
Accessories and Modifications..... 610

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. (Note, however, that service at an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

➡ **Maintenance** P. 41

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Checking the Brake Fluid** P. 578
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 588
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 580
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 584

Inspection and Maintenance

All maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the driver information interface.

➡ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 569

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at *https://techinfo.honda.com*.

➡ **Authorized Manuals** P. 673

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage systems, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  ▶ Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Maintenance

Continued

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the motor compartment.
  ▶ Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the power system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed to do so. Keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

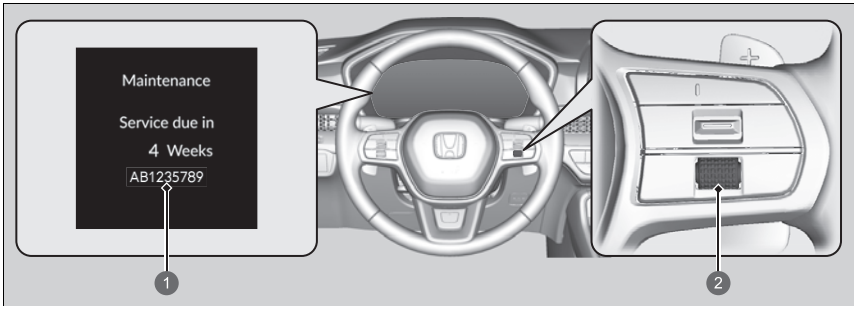
Maintenance Minder™

If the vehicle has maintenance items due within 30 days, you will see the Maintenance Minder messages appear on the driver information interface every time you set the power mode to ON. The messages notify you when to bring your vehicle to an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for indicated maintenance services.

To Use Maintenance Minder™

■ Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Roll the right selector wheel until the Maintenance Minder screen is displayed.



❶ Maintenance Item Code(s)　❷ Right Selector Wheel

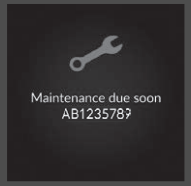
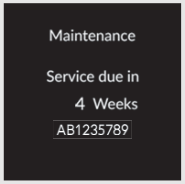
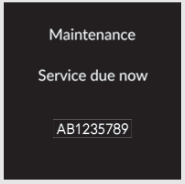
Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

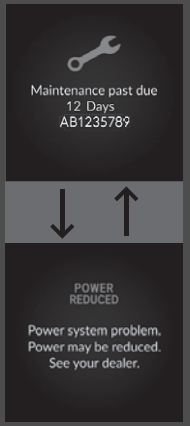
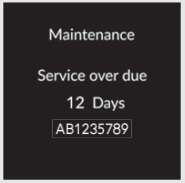
Based on the vehicle operation hours, remaining ion exchanger life is calculated.

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the driver information interface.

Maintenance Service Items P. 569

Indicator, Warning Message and Maintenance Minder Information on the Driver Information Interface

Indicator	Warning Message	Maintenance Minder Information	Explanation	Information
—	**Maintenance Due Soon** 		One or more of the service items are required in less than 30 days.	The remaining days will be counted down per day.
—	**Maintenance Due Now** 		One or more of the service items are required in less than 10 days.	Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.

Indicator	Warning Message	Maintenance Minder Information	Explanation	Information
— POWER *1 SYSTEM	**Maintenance Past Due**  *2		The indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.	Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the Maintenance Minder™.

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

*1: The **POWER SYSTEM** indicator comes on when an ion exchanger replacement is past due.

*2: The messages appear alternately when an ion exchanger replacement is past due.

■ Maintenance Service Items

❶ System Message Indicator
❷ Maintenance Minder Message
❸ Maintenance Item Code(s)

Continued

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace ion exchange filter

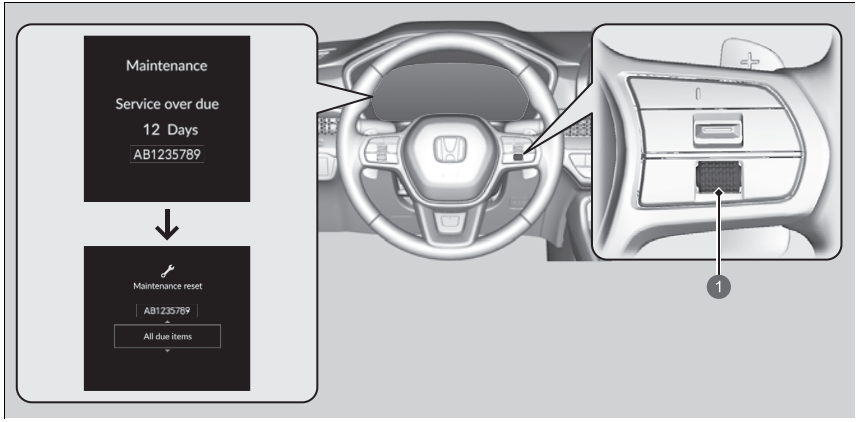
B	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Under body battery cover

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires • Check expiration date for temporary tire repair kit bottle
2	• Replace dust and pollen filter*1
3	• Replace transmission fluid
5	• Replace Fuel Cell Insulating Fluid - 50% prediluted formulation*2
7	• Replace brake fluid*3
8	• Replace air cleaner element (FC)*4
9	• Inspect leak of hydrogen tank*5 • Inspect exhaust system# • Inspect fuel lines and connections#

*1: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*2: At each maintenance interval, check Fuel Cell Insulating Fluid level and top up (to "Max").
If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 years after the display for item 5 is reset, change Fuel Cell Insulating Fluid with "Fuel Cell Insulating Fluid - 50% prediluted formulation" every 12 years.
*3: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.
*4: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 2 years after the display for item 8 is reset, replace air cleaner element every 2 years.
*5: Replace hydrogen tank every 15 years without the maintenance minder.
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty on page 670.

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the maintenance minder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.
Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer reset the maintenance item code for ion exchanger replacement as it is not possible to do this on your own.



1 Right Selector Wheel

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Roll the right selector wheel until the Maintenance Minder screen is displayed.
3. Press and hold the right selector wheel for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
4. Roll the right selector wheel to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select **All due items** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
5. Press the right selector wheel to reset the selected item.
6. Repeat from step 3 for other items you wish to reset.

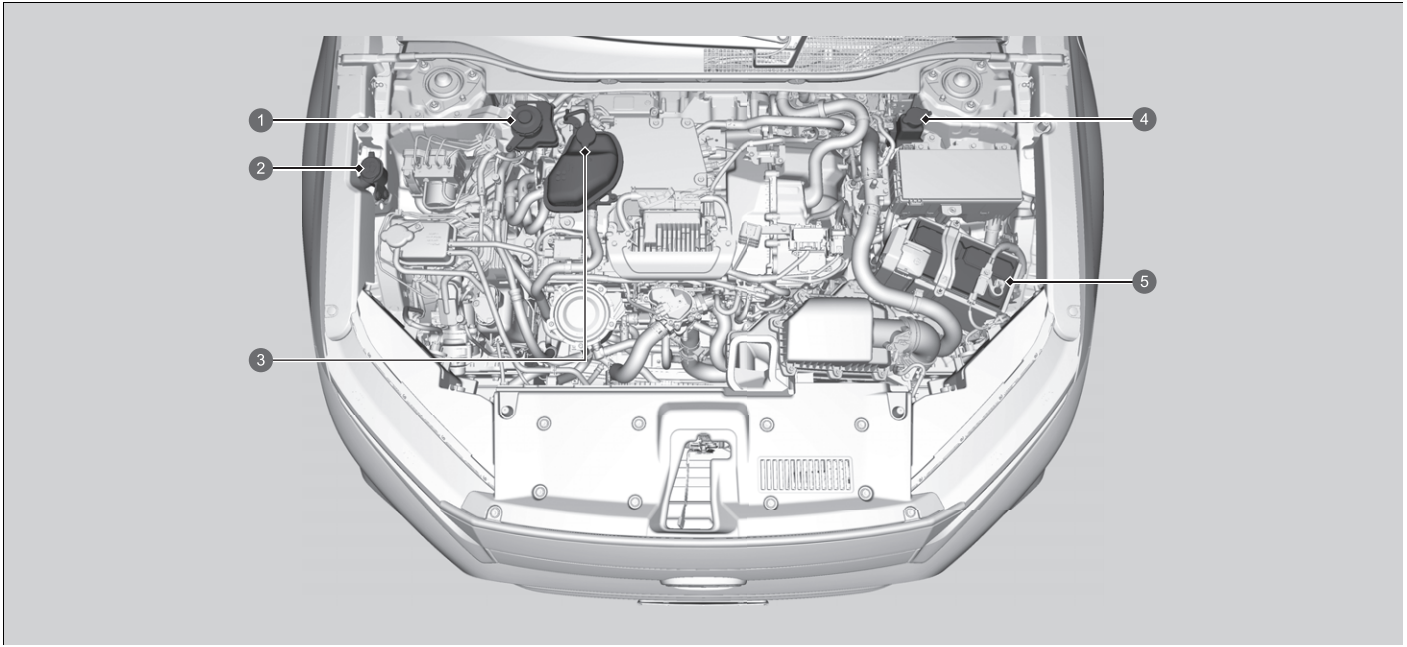
Resetting the Display

NOTICE
Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display yourself.

You can also reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.
Customized Features P. 326

Maintenance Items Under the Hood

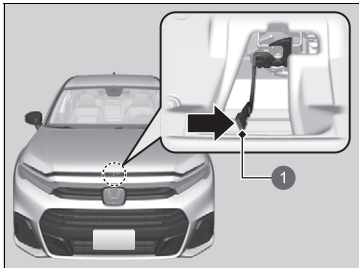


1. Brake Fluid (Black Cap)
2. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
3. High Voltage System Coolant Tank A
4. High Voltage System Coolant Tank B
5. 12-Volt Battery

Opening the Hood

❶ Hood Release Handle
❷ Pull

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the driver's side lower corner of the dashboard.
▶ The hood will pop up slightly.



❶ Lever

3. Push the hood latch lever (located under the front edge of the hood to the center) to the side and raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.

Opening the Hood

NOTICE
Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised. The hood will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the hood and/or the wipers.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Continued

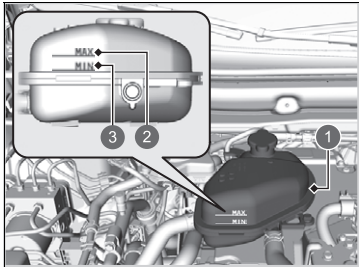
4. Lift the hood up most of the way.
▶ The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

When closing, lower it to approximately 12 inches (30 cm), then press down firmly with your hands.

High Voltage System Coolant

When checking the coolant level, make sure to follow the procedures listed below. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

■ Coolant Tank A



❶ Coolant Tank A
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

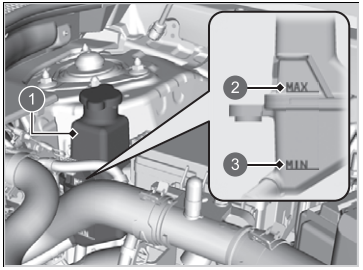
1. Check the coolant level in the tank.
2. If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
▶ Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

High Voltage System Coolant

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's coolant system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the motor components.

Continued

■ Coolant Tank B



❶ Coolant Tank B
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. Check the coolant level in the tank.
2. If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
▶ Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HEVF-Type 1

Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid yourself.

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HEVF-Type 1 with other transmission fluids.

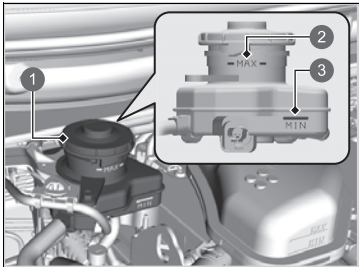
Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HEVF-Type 1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HEVF-Type 1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Brake Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

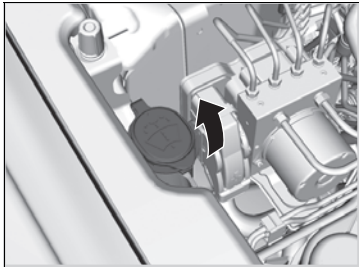
If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use motor antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir.
Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.
Use only commercially available windshield washer fluid.
Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal, Parking/Daytime Running Lights

Front turn signal, parking/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Side Marker Lights

Front side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

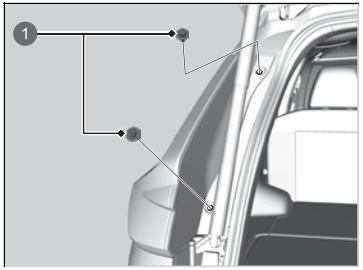
Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area, have the aiming readjusted at an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer or by a qualified technician.

Brake Lights, Taillights, Rear Side Marker Lights, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

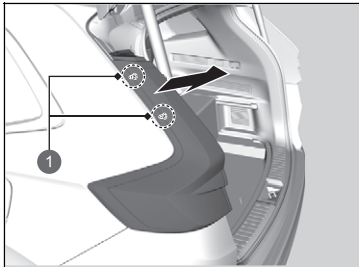
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light: LED
Taillight: LED
Rear Side Marker Light: LED
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1. Unscrew the bolts.

1 Bolt



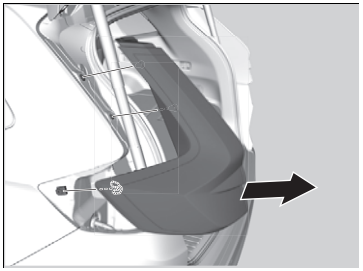
2. Pull the taillight carefully until the snap pins are removed from the body grommets.

1 Snap Pin

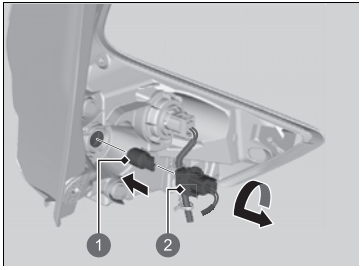
Brake Lights, Taillights, Rear Side Marker Lights, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Brake lights, taillights, and rear side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Continued



3. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



4. Turn the socket counterclockwise and remove it.
5. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.
6. Align the pins with the body grommets, then push in until they fully seat.

❶ Bulb
❷ Socket

Taillights and Back-Up Lights

Taillights and back-up lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear License Plate Light

Rear license plate light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

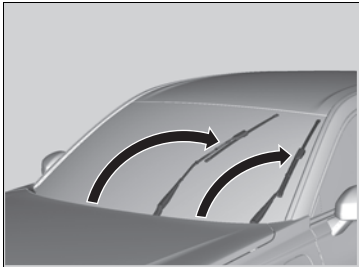
High-Mount Brake Light

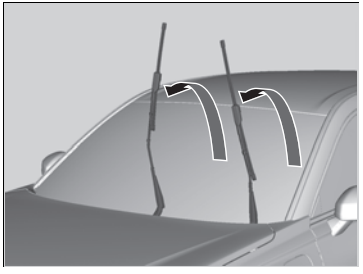
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Lifting the Front Wiper Arms





1. Set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Within 10 seconds of setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position for more than two seconds.
   ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
3. Lift both wiper arms.

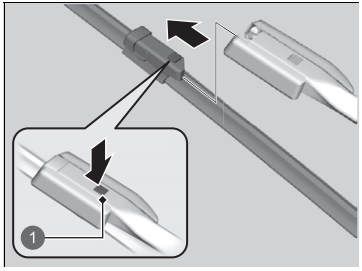
Lifting the Front Wiper Arms

NOTICE

When lifting the wiper arms, always follow the instructions to move them into the maintenance position.

The wiper arms may be damaged if they are moved manually.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade



❶ Tab

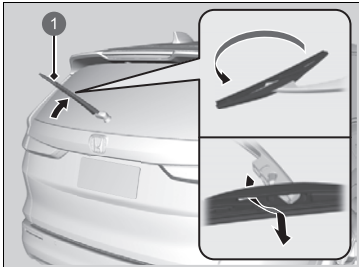
1. Lift both wiper arms.
   ➡ **Lifting the Front Wiper Arms** P. 584
2. Depress the lock tab, then slide the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
3. Slide the new wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
4. Lower both wiper arms.
5. Set the power mode to ON, then set the wiper switch to the **MIST** position once.
   ▶ The wiper arms return to the standard position.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade

NOTICE

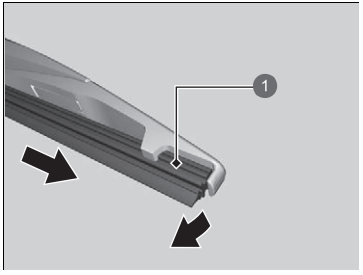
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

1 Wiper Arm



3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

1 Blade

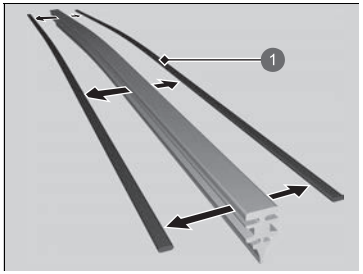
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

Do not try to forcefully lift up the wiper arm.
The wiper arm may be damaged if it is lifted too high.

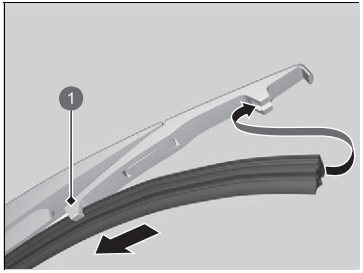
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm, as it may damage the rear window.



1 Retainer

4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.



1 Holder

5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specifications page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires. Even tires in good condition can lose 1–2 psi (10–20 kPa, 0.1–0.2 kgf/cm^2) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 594
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Checking Tires

⚠WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm^2) higher than if checked when cold.

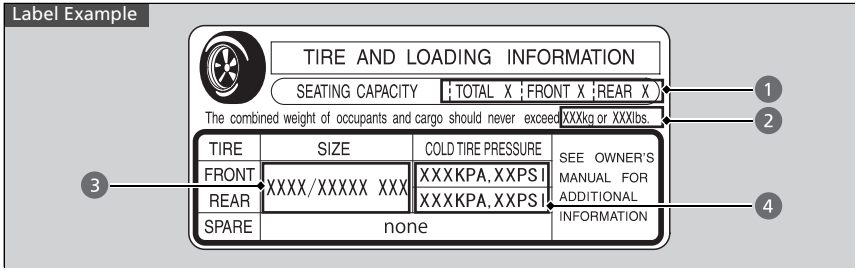
Whenever tire pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.
➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 423

Have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver's doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.

Label Example

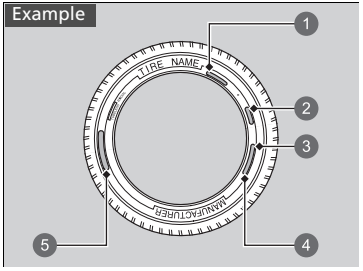


Tire and Loading Information Label

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver's doorjamb contains:

1. The number of people your vehicle can carry.
2. The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
3. The original tire sizes for front, rear, and spare.
4. The proper cold tire pressure for front, rear, and spare.

Tire Labeling



The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described as shown.

1. Tire Size
2. Tire Identification Number (TIN)
3. Maximum Tire Load
4. Maximum Tire Pressure
5. Tire Size

■ Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

Tire Sizes

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.
P235/60 R18 102T
P: Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).
235: Tire width in millimeters.
60: Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).
R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).
18: Rim diameter in inches.
102: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).
T: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

■ Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the examples in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

■ Glossary of Tire Terminology

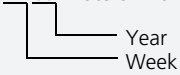
Cold Tire Pressure – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).
Load Rating – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.
Maximum Inflation Pressure – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.
Maximum Load Rating – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.
Recommended Inflation Pressure – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.
Treadwear Indicators (TWI) – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

There are two different formats that the TIN may be listed in.

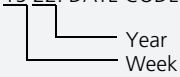
Format A

DOT B97R FW6X 2209
DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.
FW6X: Tire type code.
22 09: Date of manufacture.



Format B

DOT 1A3 OFBEKP 1522
DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
1A3: PLANT CODE
OFBEKP: MANUFACTURER'S CODE
15 22: DATE CODE



DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

■ Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:
Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

■ Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

■ Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

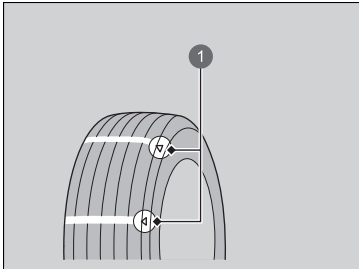
Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wear Indicators



1 Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1/16 inch (about 1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire.

Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.

Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tire and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

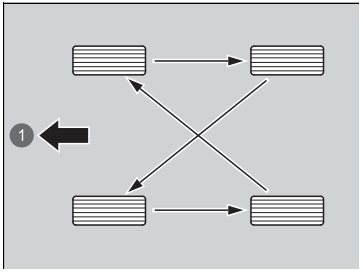
Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Tire Rotation

Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the driver information interface helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

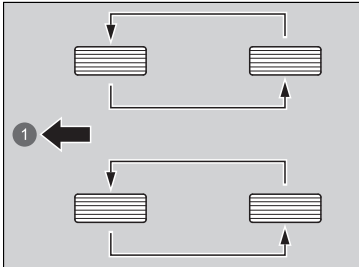
■ Tires without rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

1 Front

■ Tires with rotation marks

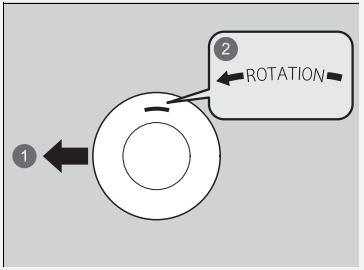


Rotate the tires as shown here.

1 Front

Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



1 Front
2 Direction Mark

Whenever tires are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 423

Wheel nut torque for the tires that come standard-equipped with your vehicle is as follows.
Wheel nut torque:
94 lbf·ft (127 N·m, 13 kgf·m)

Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked **M+S** tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:
- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Cable-type: SCC RADIAL CHAIN TC2212MM

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Winter Tires

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

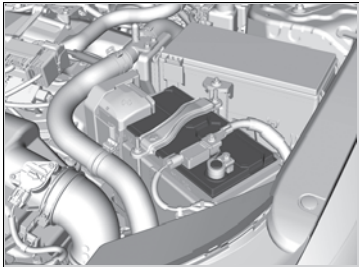
NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Checking the 12-Volt Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.

Audio System Theft Protection P. 243

12-Volt Battery

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

WARNING: Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.
Wash your hands after handling.

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.

12-Volt Battery

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

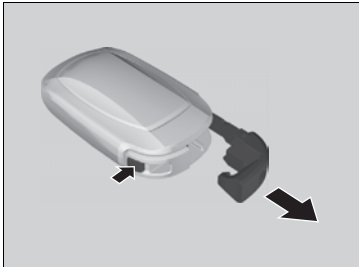
When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for more information.

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with System Updates.
Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent System Updates from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.

The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tire pressure/ TPMS and safety support indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

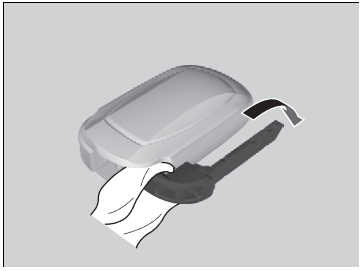
Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with the key grip.
▶ Wrap a key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

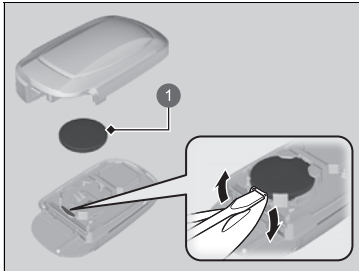
Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

NOTICE
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.



❶ Battery

3. Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

Air Conditioning

To ensure proper and safe operation, the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE J2845) recommends that the refrigerant system only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

New replacement mobile air conditioning evaporators must be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.

Climate Control System Maintenance

NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the hood:

Safety Labels P. 102
Specifications P. 666

Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

Dust and Pollen Filter

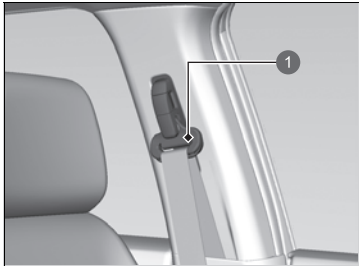
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for replacement.

Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



1 Loop

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

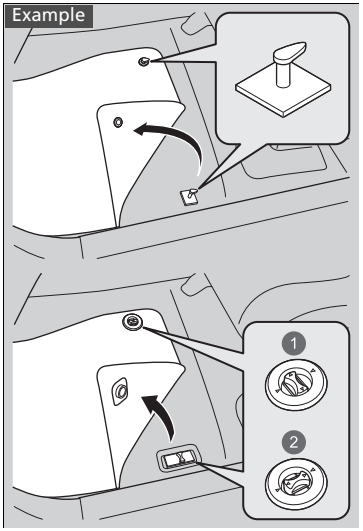
Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Continued

■ Floor Mats



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

❶ Unlock
❷ Lock

■ Charging Cable Plug and Charging Connector

When the charging cable plug and charging connector gets dirty, wipe the dirt with a soft cloth.

Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather, resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark colored clothing can rub onto the leather seats, resulting in discoloration or stains.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.
Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.
- If driving in conditions that cause buildup of mud, snow, ice, or other debris on the inner fender vents.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.

❶ Air Intake Vents

Lock the doors when washing the vehicle.
Do not spray water directly onto the charge lid. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windshield, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

Lifting the Front Wiper Arms P. 584

If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

Using an Automated Car Wash

Do not use an automated car wash.

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the motor compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly around the hydrogen fuel receptacle.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

Using an Automated Car Wash

NOTICE

Never run the vehicle through a conveyor-style car wash or use any type of motorized cleaning device. Doing so could damage the vehicle and the paint. Always wash the vehicle by hand with a mild car wash detergent and plenty of water.

Continued

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

Your vehicle's paint requires up to 60 days from the production date to fully cure. During this time, avoid applying any wax or paint sealant-type products, as they could inhibit the curing process and affect the paint's durability.

You may polish the paint during these 60 days if the polish does not contain any wax or paint sealant ingredients. Use only clean, high-quality microfiber towels or pads, as they are a softer material with less chance of scratching the finish. It is absolutely necessary to keep the microfiber towels or pads properly cleaned and maintained before using on your vehicle.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, high voltage system coolant, or battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

Ask an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Maintaining Aluminum Wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminum alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

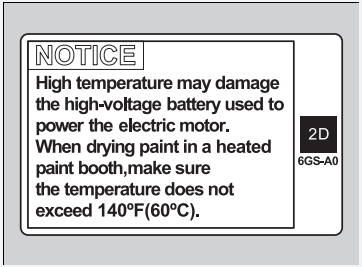
■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

■ Painting the Vehicle

Refer to the color code label and temperature notice label affixed to the driver's doorjamb before painting the vehicle.

Painting the Vehicle



Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on the sides of the rear seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
  Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  ➡ **Fuses** P. 648
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for assistance. If possible, have an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

⚠WARNING

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered, and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered, and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

Accessories and Modifications

Some Honda Genuine Accessories are supplied with an exclusive owner's manual for the operation and care detail of the product. If an accessory owner's manual is provided to you, please refer to it for full detail.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

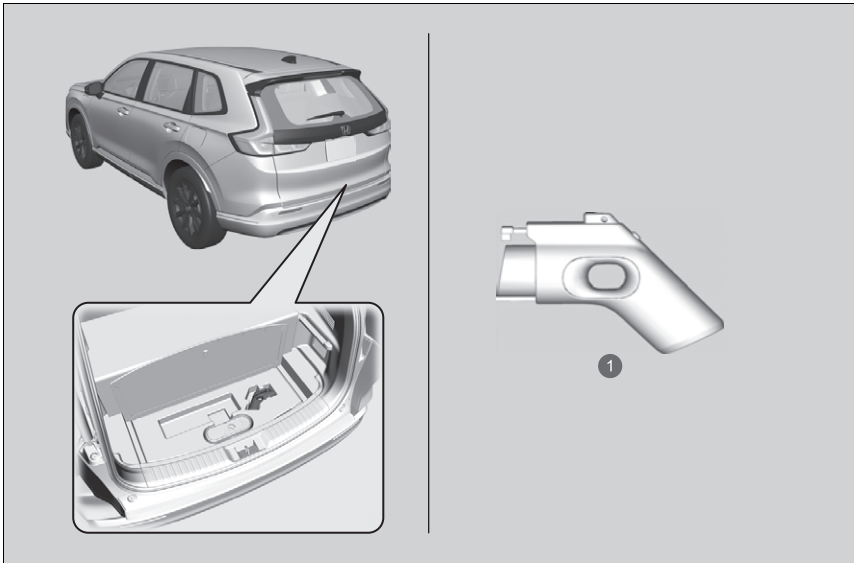
This page intentionally left blank.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools 614
If a Tire Goes Flat 615
Handling of the Jack 629
Power System Won't Start
Checking the Procedure 630
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak .. 632
Emergency Power System On 633
Emergency Power System Off 634
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 635
Overheating 637
If Hydrogen Gas is Leaking 638
Indicator Coming On/Blinking
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On 640
If the Limited stopping power Warning Appears 640
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 641
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On .. 642
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 643
If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks 644
If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message 645
If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears 646
If the Close hydrogen fuel lid Warning Appears 647
Fuses
Fuse Locations 648
Inspecting and Changing Fuses 653
Emergency Towing 657
If You Cannot Unlock the Hydrogen Fuel Lid .. 659
If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid 660
If You Cannot Disengage the Charging/ Power Supply Connector 661
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate 662
In Case of Emergency or Vehicle Trouble .. 663

Types of Tools



1 Power Supply Connector

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the cargo area.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

If the tire has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tire only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tire repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

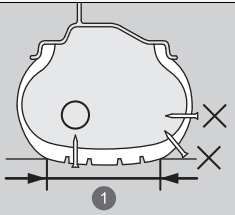
If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer or roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tire sealant has expired.
- More than one tire is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 5/32 inch (4 mm).
- The tire side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 5/32 inch (4 mm)	Yes
Larger than 5/32 inch (4 mm)	No

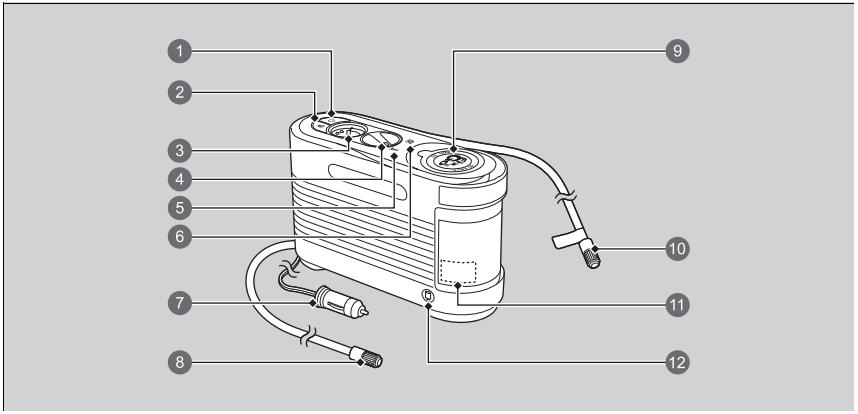
1 Contact Area

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tire extremely under inflated.
- The tire bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tire. If you remove it from the tire, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

Continued

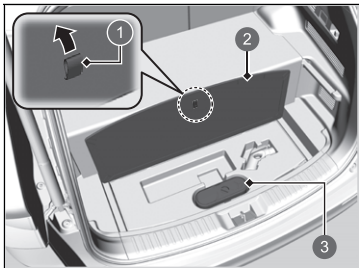
■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire



❶ Inflator Switch
❷ Air Release Button
❸ Pressure Gauge
❹ Selector Knob
❺ AIR Side
❻ REPAIR Side
❼ Power Plug
❽ Air Hose
❾ Speed Restriction Label
❿ Sealant Hose
⓫ Tire Sealant Expiration Date
⓬ Bottle Release Button

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire

Speed restriction label is applied on the temporary tire repair kit.

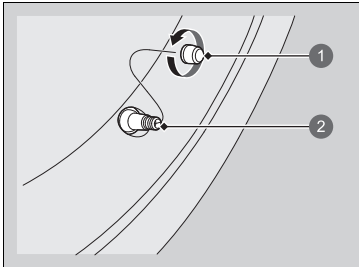


❶ Strap
❷ Floor Lid
❸ Tire Repair Kit

1. Pull the strap and open the cargo area floor lid.
2. Take the kit out of the cargo area.
3. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the flat tire and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

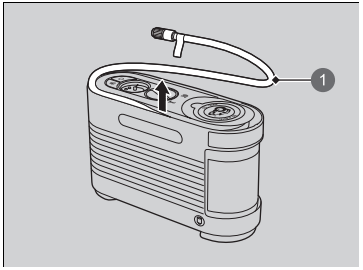
Continued

■ Injecting Sealant and Air



❶ Valve Cap
❷ Tire Valve Stem

1. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem.



❶ Sealant Hose

2. Remove the sealant hose from the kit.

Injecting Sealant and Air

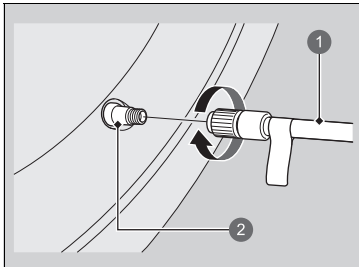
⚠WARNING

Tire sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

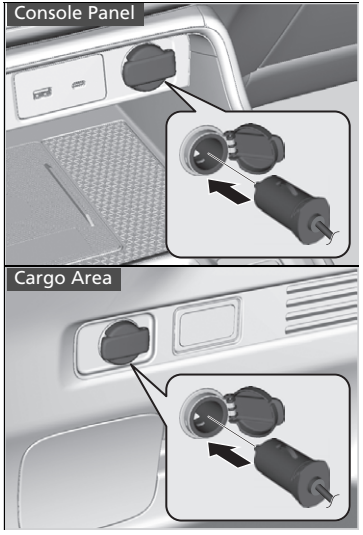
For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.



❶ Sealant Hose
❷ Tire Valve Stem

3. Attach the sealant hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.



4. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
▶ Do not plug any other electric devices into other accessory power sockets.
➡ **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 219

5. Turn the power system on.
➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 397
▶ Keep the power system on while injecting sealant and air.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

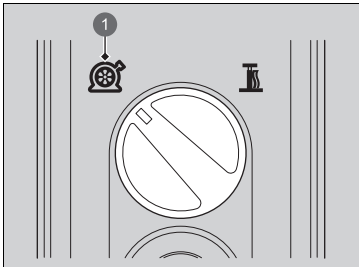
Do not use the compressor in garages, warehouses or poorly ventilated places.

There is danger of lack of oxygen.

NOTICE

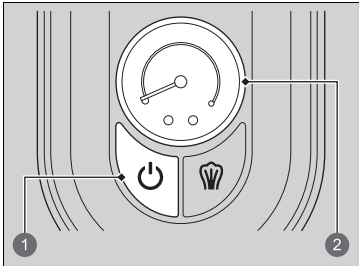
Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Continued



1 REPAIR Side

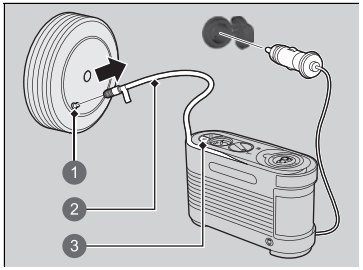
6. Turn the selector knob to .



1 Inflator Switch
2 Pressure Gauge

7. Press the inflator switch to turn on the kit.
▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tire.
▶ When the sealant injection is complete, continue to add air.

8. After the air pressure reaches front: 38 psi (260 kPa)/rear: 35 psi (240 kPa), turn off the kit.
▶ To check the pressure, occasionally turn off the compressor and read the gauge.



❶ Tire Valve Stem
❷ Sealant Hose
❸ Air Release Button

9. Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
10. Unscrew the sealant hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
11. Press the air release button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).

Injecting Sealant and Air

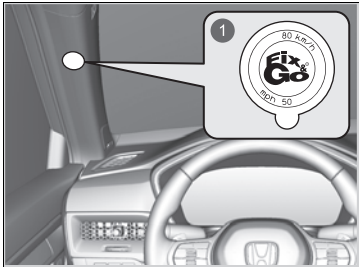
Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete, the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tire is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tire may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal, and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

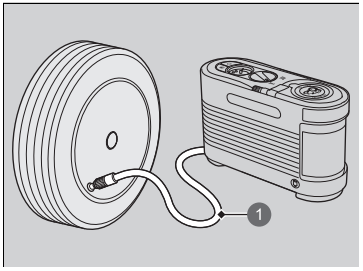
Continued

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tire



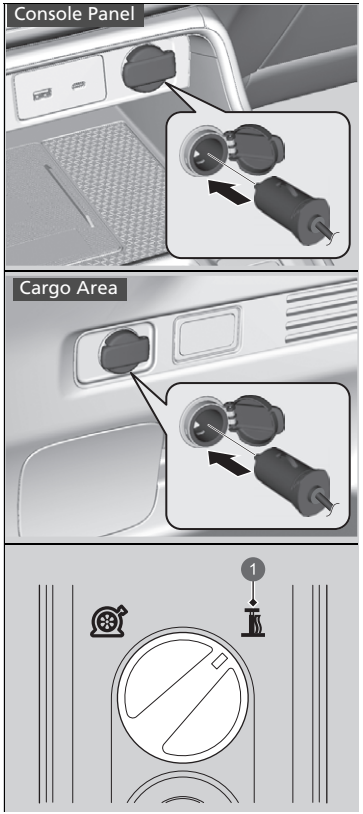
1 Speed Restriction Label

1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
▶ Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.



1 Air Hose

4. Recheck the air pressure using the air hose on the compressor.



1 AIR Side

5. Turn the selector knob to .

▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

➡ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tire** P. 626

Distributing the Sealant in the Tire

⚠WARNING

Do not use the compressor in garages, warehouses or poorly ventilated places.

There is danger of lack of oxygen.

Continued

6. If the air pressure is

- Less than 19 psi (130kPa):

Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 657

- Front: 38 psi (260 kPa)/rear: 35 psi (240 kPa) or more:

Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station, whichever is sooner. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If you have not reached a service station, stop and check the tire pressure.

▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.

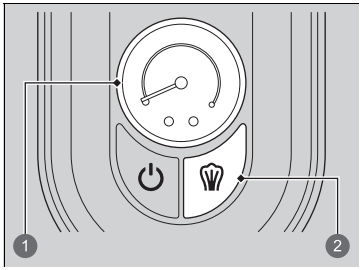
- Greater than 19 psi (130 kPa), but less than front: 38 psi (260 kPa)/rear: 35 psi (240 kPa):

Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tire until the tire pressure reaches front: 38 psi (260 kPa)/rear: 35 psi (240 kPa).

➡ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tire** P. 626

Then, drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station, whichever is sooner. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If you have not reached a service station, stop and check the tire pressure.

▶ You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is not within the range indicated for the tire size.



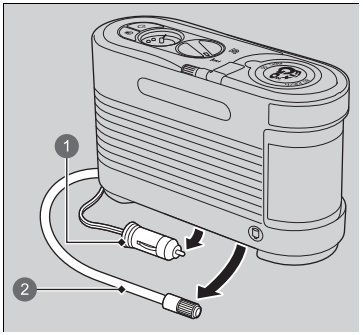
❶ Pressure Gauge
❷ Air Release Button

7. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
8. Unscrew the air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
9. Press the air release button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).
10. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Continued

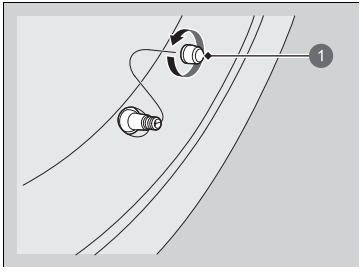
■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tire.



❶ Power Plug
❷ Air Hose

1. Open the cargo area floor lid.
➡ **Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire** P. 616
2. Take the kit out of the cargo area.
3. Place the kit face up on flat ground near the tire to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
4. Remove the power plug and air hose from the kit.

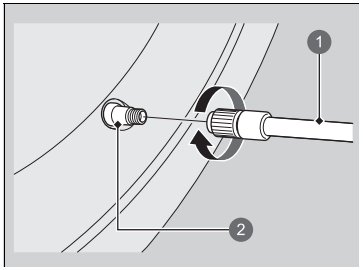


❶ Valve Cap

5. Remove the valve cap.

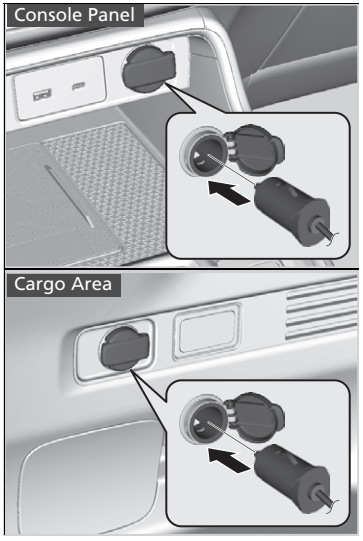
Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

NOTICE
Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.



1 Air Hose
2 Tire Valve Stem

6. Attach the air hose onto the tire valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.



7. Plug in the kit to the accessory power socket.
▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
▶ Do not plug any other electric devices into other accessory power sockets.
➡ **Accessory Power Sockets** P. 219

8. Turn the power system on.
➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 397
▶ Keep the power system on while injecting sealant and air.

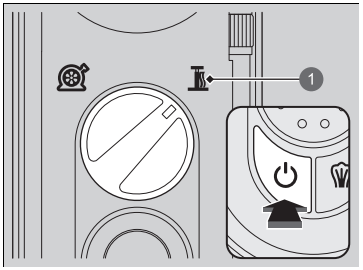
Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

⚠WARNING

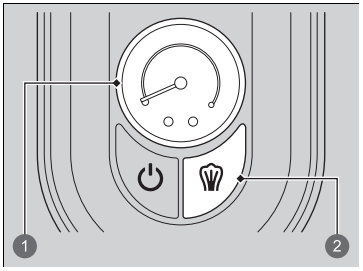
Do not use the compressor in garages, warehouses or poorly ventilated places.

There is danger of lack of oxygen.

Continued



❶ AIR Side

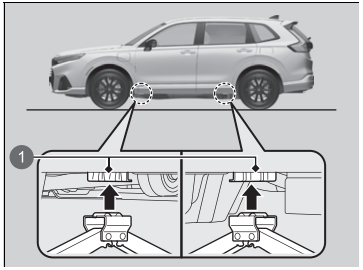


❶ Pressure Gauge
❷ Air Release Button

9. Turn the selector knob to .
10. Press the inflator switch to turn on the kit.
▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tire.
11. Inflate the tire to the specified air pressure.

12. Turn off the kit.
▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ If overinflated, press the air release button.
13. Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
14. Unscrew the air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
15. Press the air release button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).
16. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tires, consult an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.



❶ Jacking Points

Checking the Procedure

If the power system won't start, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	The **Temperature is too cold for vehicle to operate** message appears.	• You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature. • Have the vehicle towed to a warmer location. ➔ **Emergency Towing** P. 657
	The **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears. ►Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.	➔ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 632
	The transmission system indicator blinks and the **Transmission system problem. Apply parking brake when parked.** message appears.	➔ **If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message** P. 645
	The **Close hydrogen fuel lid** message appears.	➔ **If the Close hydrogen fuel lid Warning Appears** P. 647
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in P.	Change the shift position to P.
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	➔ **Immobilizer System** P. 173 ➔ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 117
Check the power system starting procedure.		Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again. ➔ **Turning on the Power** P. 397
Check the fuses.		Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer. ➔ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 653

If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

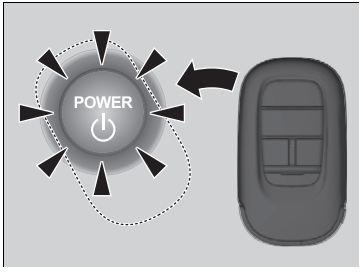
➔ **If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead** P. 635

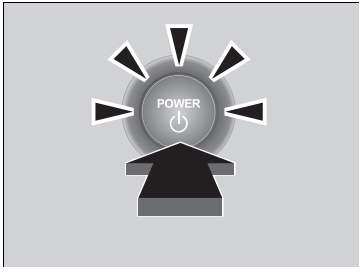
Depending on the situation, you may be able to temporarily turn the power system on using the emergency starting procedure.

➔ **Emergency Power System On** P. 633

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the **READY** indicator does not come on, turn on the power system as follows:





1. Press the **POWER** button.
   ▶ The beeper sounds and the **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
2. Touch the center of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
   ▶ The beeper sounds, and the **POWER** button stays on for about 10 seconds.
3. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button while the **POWER** button is on.
   ▶ The **READY** indicator comes on.
   ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System On

If the power system cannot be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency starting procedure below.
Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Check that the transmission is in P, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.
Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the power system disables the power assist the power system provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The transmission automatically changes to P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, the power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

Emergency Power System Off

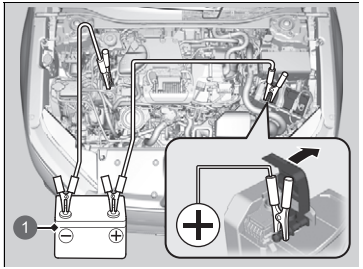
NOTICE

Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

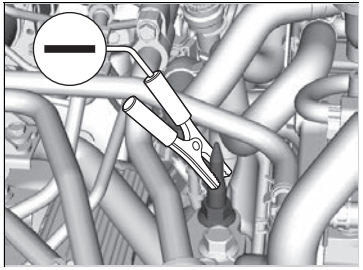
If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the hood.



❶ Booster Battery



1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's 12-volt battery positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
   - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the power system mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's power system. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Jump Starting Procedure

⚠WARNING

A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the power system vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the power system from starting.

The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, brake system (Amber), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, low tire pressure/TPMS and Safety Support indicators may come on along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued

■ What to Do After the Power System Starts

Once your vehicle's power system has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

How to Handle Overheating

If you notice any of the following signs, it is possible that the vehicle is overheating.

- The **POWER SYSTEM** indicator comes on and the **Power system problem. Do not drive.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the motor room.

■ The Power system problem. Do not drive. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present**: Keep the power system on, then open the hood.

▶ **Steam or spray is present**: Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then, open the hood.

■ Last thing to do

Turn the power system on. If the **Power system problem. Do not drive.** message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer or repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated power system can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Power system problem. Do not drive.** message on the driver information interface may damage the motor.

If the coolant is leaking, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Leaked Hydrogen Gas

When Hydrogen Gas Leak or Other Malfunction is Detected

When the hydrogen leak indicator comes on, hydrogen gas is leaking.
When a hydrogen gas leak is detected, the warning buzzer sounds, and the warning indicator comes on. Follow the message displayed on the driver information interface and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Hydrogen Leak Indicator P. 114

Even when the warning indicator does not come on, if you notice gas leaking noises or any other malfunction, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe, well-ventilated place, turn the power system off, and immediately contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

How to Handle Leaked Hydrogen Gas

⚠WARNING

Since hydrogen gas is highly flammable, a hydrogen gas leak is extremely dangerous as the leaked gas, which is dispersed into the atmosphere, can ignite, resulting in a fire in which you or someone else can be seriously injured or killed. Keep flammable materials and liquids away from the vehicle at all times, especially if a hydrogen gas leak is detected.

In the case of a hydrogen gas leak, a buzzer will sound and the hydrogen leak indicator will come on. If you are driving the vehicle, stop in a safe, well-ventilated place. Then, turn the power system off and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer at once. You should also display signs warning of the danger and be aware of and keep away anything that could ignite the gas.

The system is designed so that in the event that the vehicle catches fire, the gas inside the tanks will be released through the tank valves, thereby ensuring that pressure (due to heat from the fire) within the tanks does not build up.

How to Handle Leaked Hydrogen Gas

⚠WARNING

This gas is released toward the rear of the vehicle in a downward direction. Do not attempt to extinguish the fire from behind the vehicle as the exiting gas may ignite into a flame.

NOTICE

Hydrogen gas is colorless, odorless, very light, and flammable. Also, its burning flame is difficult to detect by sight.

If a vehicle fire occurs, leaked hydrogen gas may be ignited. Stay far away from the vehicle, call the local fire department, and report that the vehicle has hydrogen tanks.
To extinguish a vehicle fire, use a large amount of water, a dry chemical fire extinguisher (Class A, B, or C), or a carbon dioxide fire extinguisher. With an inadequate amount of water, a fire cannot be put out completely. Never attempt to extinguish a vehicle fire with a small amount of water.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**
Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.
■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**
Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

If the Limited stopping power Warning Appears

■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**
Appears when braking ability is reduced.
■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**
Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. Pull the [−] deceleration paddle selector several times to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the [−] deceleration paddle selector to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On
P. 642

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 514

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.
  ▶ To prevent the vehicle from moving, put the transmission into P.
- If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tire pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after the tire pressure is adjusted.

TPMS Calibration P. 423

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tire inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer as soon as possible.

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

The transmission is malfunctioning.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

- Immediately have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.
- Put the transmission into N after turning the power system on.
  - ▶ Check if the N position on the instrument panel is lit and if the indicator on the N button is lit or blinking.
  - ▶ The power system cannot be turned on unless the parking brake is set.

➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 397

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message

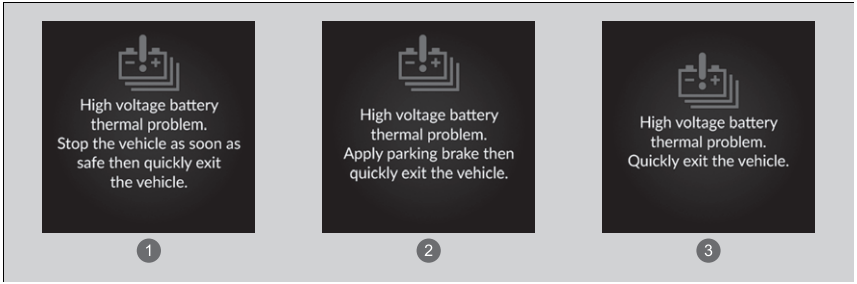
You may not be able to turn on the power system.

Make sure to set the parking brake when parking your vehicle.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 657

If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears



❶ While driving
❷ While stopped (shift position can be changed to P)
❸ While stopped (shift position cannot be changed to P)

■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**
- Appears when thermal runaway may be occurring in the High Voltage battery.
- Immediately stop in a safe place and apply the parking brake.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**
Immediately move away from the vehicle and contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

If the Propulsion Battery Thermal Runaway Warning Appears

⚠WARNING

Do not approach the vehicle since it may emit harmful fumes. Even if the vehicle stops producing fumes, it may start again after some time.

If the Close hydrogen fuel lid Warning Appears

■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the user attempts to set the power mode to ON while the hydrogen fuel lid is open.

■ **What to do when the warning appears**

- Close the hydrogen fuel lid.
- If the warning does not disappear even after closing the hydrogen fuel lid, have your vehicle checked by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer as soon as possible.

If the Close hydrogen fuel lid Warning Appears

By following the steps below, the power mode can temporarily be set to ON even when the warning message is displayed.
After confirming that the hydrogen fuel lid is shut, drive to the nearest authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

1. With the parking brake applied and without depressing the brake pedal, press the **POWER** button.
2. Depress and then release the brake pedal.
3. Depress the accelerator pedal all the way and then release it.
4. Repeat step 3.
5. Depress and then release the brake pedal.
6. Press the **POWER** button with the brake pedal depressed.

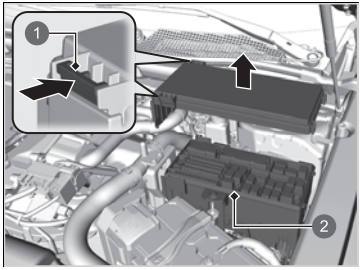
Steps 2-5 should be performed within 10 seconds.

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

■ Motor Compartment Fuse Box Type A

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.
Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



❶ Tab
❷ Fuse Box

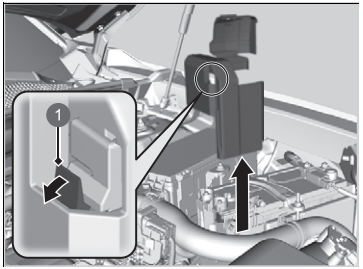
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	MAIN FUSE	175 A
2	WIPER	30 A
	ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
	EPS	70 A
	IG MAIN1	30 A
	-	50 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	IG MAIN2	30 A
3	SRM1	30 A
	SRM2	30 A
	-	70 A
	P-ACT	30 A
	ESB	40 A
	-	30 A
	F/BOX MAIN2	60 A
4	-	30 A
	-	30 A
	F/BOX OPTION2	60 A
	FCEWP	70 A
	SUB FUSE1	40 A
	F/BOX OPTION1	60 A
	PTG MTR	40 A
5	SUB FUSE2	30 A
	AUDIO AMP	30 A
	-	70 A
	RR DEF	30 A
	HTR MTR	40 A
	-	30 A
	F/BOX MAIN1	60 A
6	-	-
7	-	-
8	DRIVE UNIT	10 A
9	P-ACT UNIT	10 A
10	HAZARD	10 A
11	ECU	7.5 A
12	IGFC1	10 A
13	ECOMP	10 A
14	LCM L	20 A
15	IGDTEWP	20 A
16	STOP	10 A
17	LCM R	20 A
18	IGB	10 A
19	-	-
20	EWPES	10 A
21	BACK UP	10 A
22	WASHER	15 A
23	SUB AUDIO	7.5 A
24	-	-
25	IGC	10 A
26	EWP AC	10 A
27	-	-
28	-	-
29	SOV	10 A
30	ECHES	7.5 A
31	HORN	10 A
32	A/C MAIN	10 A
33	AUDIO	15 A
34	-	-
35	IGFC3	10 A
36	IGFC4	10 A
37	IGFC6	10 A
38	-	-
39	IGFC7	15 A
40	FCHTR1	15 A
41	IGFC2	10 A
42	FCHTR2	20 A
43	-	-
44	-	-

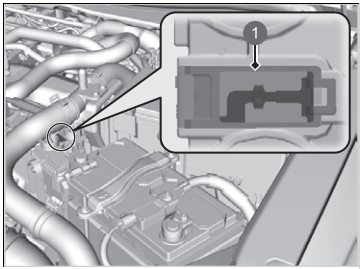
Continued

■ Motor Compartment Fuse Box Type B

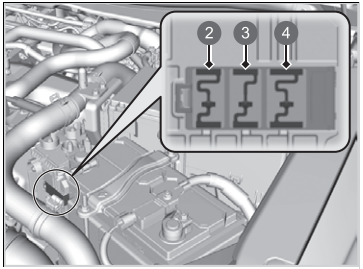
Located near the ⊕ terminal of the 12-volt battery.
Pull up the cover on the ⊕ terminal, then remove it while pulling out the tab as shown.
Replacement of the fuses should be done by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.



❶ Tab



❶ Fuse a



❷ Fuse b
❸ Fuse c
❹ Fuse d

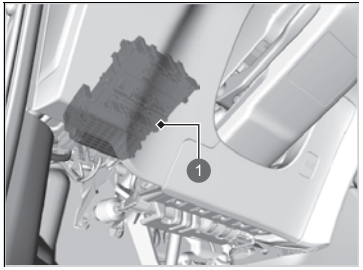
■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
a	-	200 A
b	RFC	70 A
c	-	80 A
d	-	60 A

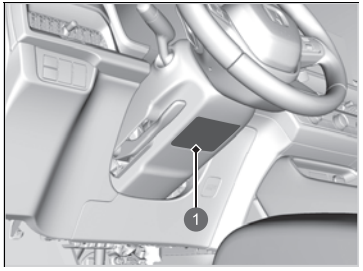
■ Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.



❶ Fuse Box



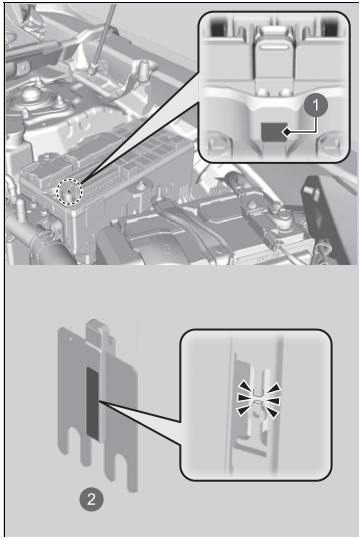
❶ Fuse Label

Continued

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	P/W DR	20 A
2	P/W AS	20 A
3	P/W RR R	20 A
4	P/W RR L	20 A
5	OPTION	10 A
6	SRS	10 A
7	-	-
8	-	-
9	FR ACC SOCKET	20 A
10	DOOR LOCK	20 A
11	METER	10 A
12	-	-
13	OPTION 2	10 A
14	-	-
15	DR DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
16	-	-
17	-	-
18	HAC OP	(20 A)
19	-	-
20	IMG	10 A
21	CARGO ACC SOCKET	20 A
22	SMART	10 A
23	DR DOOR LOCK	10 A
24	-	-
25	SBW	10 A
26	SRS	10 A
27	ACG	10 A
28	OPTION 5 (ABS)	10 A
29	ED	10 A
30	L SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
31	R SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
32	-	-
33	USB CHG	10 A
34	RDI/H2 LID	10 A
35	-	-
36	-	-
37	-	-
38	LK/UNLK ACT	10 A
39	R SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
40	DR P/SEAT SLIDE	20 A
41	DR P/SEAT REC	20 A
42	P-ACT	10 A
43	OPTION	10 A
44	DRL	5 A
45	ACC	10 A
46	-	-
47	L SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
48	H/SEAT	20 A
49	AS P/SEAT REC	20 A
50	P/LUMBAR DR/AS	10 A
51	OBPS	10 A
52	PTG CLOSER	20 A
53	AS P/SEAT SLI	20 A
54	OPTION1	10 A
55	-	-
56	-	-

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



❶ Hole
❷ Main Fuse

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the main fuse in the motor compartment fuse box type A.
▶ Look at the fuse through the hole.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

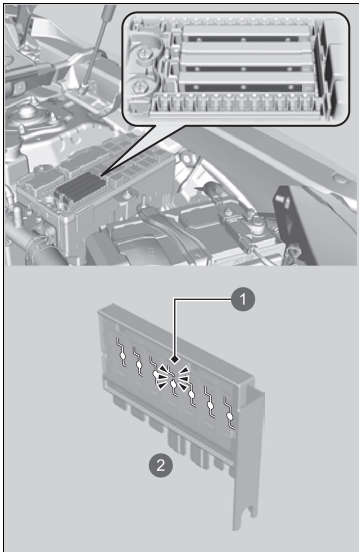
Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.
➲ **Fuse Locations** P. 648

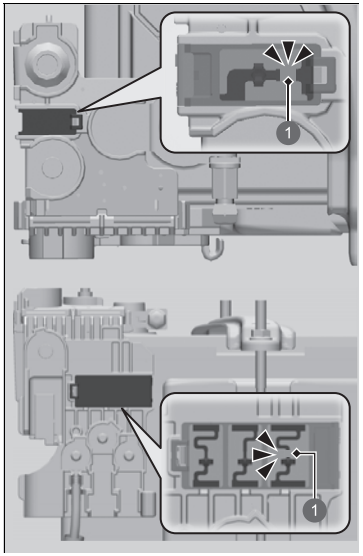
Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

Continued



❶ Blown Fuse
❷ Combined Fuse

4. Check the combined fuses in the motor compartment fuse box type A.
▶ Look into the space between the fuses.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.



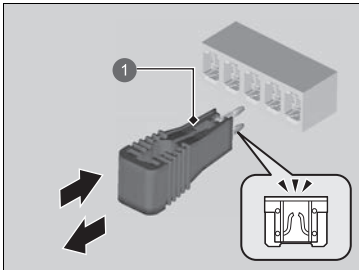
❶ Blown Fuse

5. Remove the motor compartment fuse box type B cover.

6. Check the fuses in the motor compartment fuse box type B.

▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Continued



1 Fuse Puller

7. Inspect the small fuses in the motor compartment and the vehicle interior.
▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

There is a fuse puller on the back of the motor compartment fuse box type A cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ **Flatbed equipment**
The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ **Wheel lift equipment**
The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground.
This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

NOTICE
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

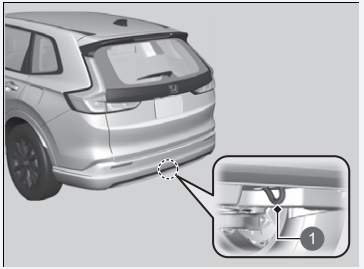
Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.
Parking Brake P. 514

Continued

Emergency Towing

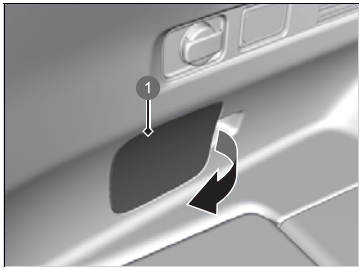
Do not use the hook on the rear of your vehicle for the towing of other vehicles or emergency removal of your vehicle. The hook may break.
If your vehicle needs to be towed backward, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer or a professional towing service.



❶ Hook

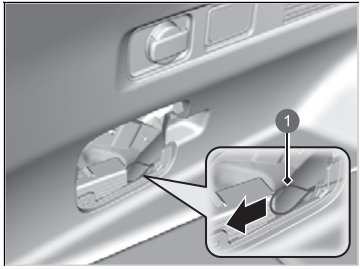
What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Hydrogen Fuel Lid

If you cannot unlock the hydrogen fuel lid, use the following procedure.



1. Open the tailgate and remove the cover.

1 Cover



2. Pull the release cord as shown.
3. Open the hydrogen fuel lid.
   How to Refuel P. 538

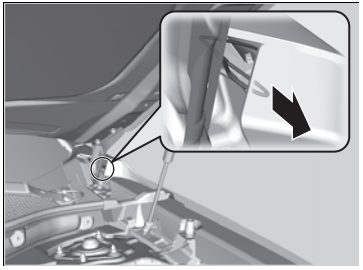
1 Release Cord

What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Hydrogen Fuel Lid

After taking these steps, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer to have the vehicle checked.

■ What to Do If Unable to Open the Charge Lid

If you cannot open the charge lid, use the following procedure.



❶ Release Cord

1. Open the hood.
➡ **Opening the Hood** P. 573

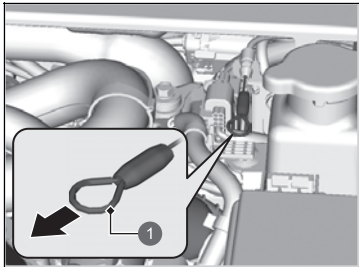
2. Pull the release cord located as shown.
▶ The lid will pop up slightly.
➡ **How to Charge** P. 544

What to Do If Unable to Open the Charge Lid

After taking this step, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer to have the vehicle checked.

What to Do If Unable to Disengage the Charging/Power Supply Connector

Disengage the charging/power supply connector as follows.



1 Release Cord

1. Make sure that charging/power supply is completed correctly.
2. Open the hood.
3. Pull the release cord.
   ▶ The release cord is near the high voltage system coolant tank B.
4. Disengage the charging/power supply connector from the inlet.
   ➡ **When charging is completed** P. 546
   ➡ **Canceling power supply** P. 230

If the Remote Battery Is Weak

The charging/power supply connector cannot be disengaged if the door is locked while the keyless remote cannot be detected, such as when the battery is weak. You can disengage the charging/power supply connector by pressing the release button in the inlet by unlocking the door with the built-in key.

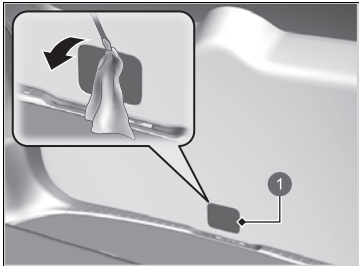
➡ **Replacing the Remote Battery** P. 600
➡ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 632

What to Do If Unable to Disengage the Charging/Power Supply Connector

If the problem that you cannot disengage the charging/power supply connector occurs repeatedly, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer to have the vehicle checked.

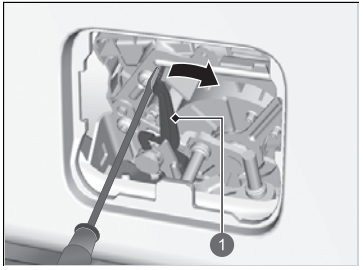
What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1 Cover

1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



1 Lever

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

Following up:
After taking these steps, contact an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

The following features are part of HondaLink®.
Refer to the following pages for details on how to use HondaLink®.
HondaLink® P. 296

In Case of Emergency

Automatic collision notification

If your vehicle's airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle automatically will attempt to connect to the HondaLink operator. If connected, information about your vehicle, its location, and its condition can be sent to the operator*1; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

IMPORTANT: For vehicles equipped with HondaLink Assist, owner activation constitutes authorization for Honda to collect information from your vehicle needed to provide the service, and agreement to the Terms of Use at *www.hondalink.com/TermsAndConditions*. In a crash, HondaLink Assist will attempt to notify emergency services but NEITHER HONDA NOR ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS GUARANTEE THAT SUCH NOTIFICATION WILL OCCUR.

Honda reserves the right to terminate HondaLink Assist services at any time or for any reason, and in the future may not be able to provide services due to changes in, or obsolescence of, technology integral to the service or changes in governmental regulation.

*1: Depending on your phone and adequate cellular coverage, your vehicle's location may not be sent to the operator.

In Case of Emergency

Your vehicle may not be able to connect to the operator if the battery level is low, the line is disconnected, or you do not have adequate cellular coverage.

You cannot use this emergency service when:
- You travel outside the HondaLink service coverage areas.
- There is a problem with the connecting devices, such as the microphones, speakers, or the unit itself.

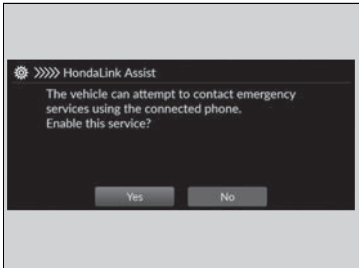
You cannot operate other phone-related functions using the screen while talking to the operator. Select **Hang Up** to terminate the connection to your vehicle.

Automatic collision notification

If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it repeatedly tries until it succeeds.

Continued

■ To enable notification



1. Go to the phone settings screen.
➡ **Phone Settings Screen** P. 349
2. Select **HondaLink Assist**.
3. Select **Yes** or **No**.

To enable notification

Setting options:
- **Yes:** Notification is available.
- **No:** Disable the feature.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications..... 666
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor Number, and Transmission Number .. 667
Devices that Emit Radio Waves..... 668
Reporting Safety Defects..... 669
Warranty Coverages 670
Authorized Manuals..... 673
Customer Service Information..... 674
Open Source License 675

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	CR-V
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	3
Total	5
Weights:	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	17.8 – 19.6 oz (505 – 555 g)
Lubricant Type	ND-OIL 11 (POE)
Quantity	11.3 – 12.2 cu-in (185 – 200 cm^3)

■ Fuel

Fuel requirement	Compressed hydrogen gas
Hydrogen supply pressure	70 MPa (10,153 psi) (at 59°F [15°C])
Hydrogen filling amount*1	Approximately 9.5 lbs (4.3 kg) (at 70 MPa [10,153 psi])
Hydrogen tanks capacity	29.83 US gal (112.9 L) (at 70 MPa [10,153 psi])

*1: A measured value when refueled at a hydrogen station with 70 MPa (10,153 psi) of supply pressure compliant with the SAE (J2601) fueling protocol.

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.6 US qt (1.5 L)

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED
Headlights (High Beam)	LED
Front Turn Signal/Parking/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Side Marker Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Rear Side Marker Lights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W Amber (WY21W)
Back-Up Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear License Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	LED
Ceiling Light	LED
Cargo Area Lights	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights	1.4 W
Console Compartment Light	LED
Front Door Inner Handle Lights	LED
Foot Lights	LED
Ambient Lights	LED
Center Console Light	LED

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HEVF-Type 1	
Capacity	Change	1.02 US qt (0.97 L)

■ High Voltage System Coolant

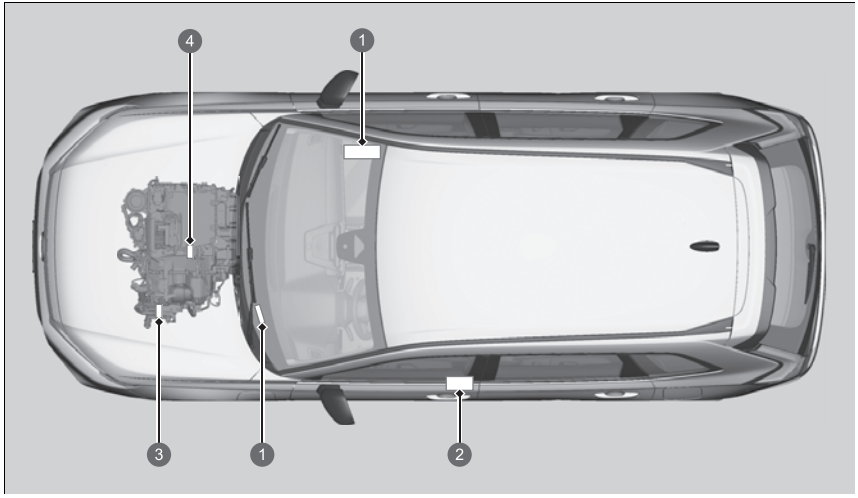
Specified	Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	Drive Unit 1.007 US gal (3.81 L) (change including the remaining 0.24 US gal (0.91 L) in the coolant tank A) IPU 0.917 US gal (3.47 L) (change including the remaining 0.058 US gal (0.22 L) in the coolant tank B)

■ Tire

Regular	Size	235/60R18 103H	
	Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm^2])	Front	38 (260 [2.6])
		Rear	35 (240 [2.4])
Wheel Size	Regular	18 x 7 1/2J	

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor Number, and Transmission Number

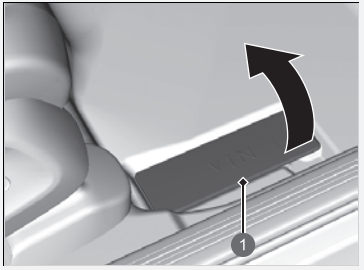
Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, motor number, and transmission number are shown as follows.



❶ Vehicle Identification Number
❷ Certification Label/Vehicle Identification Number
❸ Transmission Number (underside)
❹ Motor Number (underside)

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor Number, and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



❶ Cover

Each radio frequency device installed in the vehicle conforms to the requirements and standards of the regulation listed below:

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

In the U.S.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-888-275-9171); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

■ **U.S. Owners**

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

High Voltage Battery Warranty – covers any defects related to material or workmanship to the battery pack and its internal components for 8 years or 100,000 miles. Gradual capacity loss of the high voltage battery is expected and not covered under warranty. Greater than normal degradation is covered for 8 years or 100,000 miles, and can be determined by an authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty – all exterior body panels are covered against rusting from the inside out for the specified time period, regardless of mileage.

Accessory Limited Warranty – Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty – covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Replacement 12-Volt Battery Limited Warranty – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your authorized Honda CR-V e:FCEV dealer.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

■ Statement on Warranty Coverage for Aftermarket and Recycled Parts

The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. s.2301 et seq., makes it illegal for motor vehicle manufacturers to void a motor vehicle warranty or deny warranty coverage solely because an aftermarket or recycled part has been used to repair the vehicle or someone other than the authorized service provider performed service on the vehicle. This provision does not apply to a new motor vehicle purchased solely for commercial or industrial use.

Continued

Under federal law, a manufacturer may deny warranty coverage and charge for repairs to a vehicle if it is discovered that an aftermarket or recycled part installed on the vehicle is defective or was installed incorrectly and caused damage to another part of the vehicle otherwise covered under warranty. The Federal Trade Commission requires that a manufacturer demonstrate that an aftermarket or recycled part or service performed by a person other than an authorized service provider caused damage to another part of the vehicle otherwise covered under warranty before denying warranty coverage. Additionally, federal law allows a manufacturer to void a motor vehicle warranty or deny warranty coverage if the manufacturer provides the article or service to consumers free of charge under the warranty or the manufacturer has secured a waiver from the Federal Trade Commission.

■ EPA Contact Information

An owner may obtain further information concerning emission warranties or report violations of the terms of the emission warranties by contacting:

Director,
Light-Duty Vehicle Center,
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency,
Attention: Warranty Claim
2000 Traverwood Drive,
Ann Arbor, MI 48105;
complianceinfo@epa.gov

■ **Service Express**
For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit *https://techinfo.honda.com* for pricing and options.

■ **For U.S. Owners**
Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at 1 (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at *www.helminc.com*.

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals able to deal with any problems you may encounter with your vehicle. If, however, you are faced with a problem that they cannot resolve to your satisfaction, contact Honda Customer Service.

U.S. Owners
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Honda Automobile Customer Service
Mail Stop CHI-5
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Tel: 1 (800) 999-1009

Customer Service Information

When you call or write, please give us the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number
  Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Motor Number, and Transmission Number P. 667
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

■ **Meter Open Source License**

The software embedded in this product includes open source software. Refer to the following website for details regarding the open source software.
https://www.nippon-seiki.co.jp/global/business_ic_meter/

■ **TCU Open Source License**

Free/Open Source Software Information
This product contains Free/Open Source Software(FOSS).
The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

Continued

■ **Front Sensor Camera Open Source License**

"The product includes code under public domain : https://www.jonolick.com/uploads/7/9/2/1/7921194/jo_jpeg.cpp

The code is based on https://github.com/jpeg-js/jpeg-js/blob/master/lib/encoder.js
Copyright (c) 2008, Adobe Systems Incorporated

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of Adobe Systems Incorporated nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
*/
/*

Numbers

12-Volt Battery 598
- Charging System Indicator 112, 640
- Maintenance (Checking the 12-Volt Battery) 598

12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator 112, 640

9-in. Color Touchscreen 244

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 523

Accessories and Modifications 610

Accessory Power Sockets 219

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 413

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 119, 464

Additives
- Coolant 575
- Washer 579

Adjusting
- Armrest 209
- Clock 146
- Front Seats 199
- Head Restraints 207
- Mirrors 197
- Rear Seats 203
- Sound 264
- Steering Wheel 196

Agile Handling Assist 421

Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 232
- Changing the Mode 232
- Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 234
- Dust and Pollen Filter 602
- Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 233
- Sensor 239
- Synchronization Mode 235
- Turning the Climate Control System On and Off with the Remote 236
- Using Automatic Climate Control 232

Air Pressure 589, 666

Airbags 64
- Advanced Airbags 70
- Airbag Care 84
- Event Data Recorder 0
- Front Airbags (SRS) 67
- Indicator 81, 114
- Knee Airbags 72
- Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 82
- Sensors 64
- Side Airbags 76
- Side Curtain Airbags 79

Android Auto™ 313

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 523
- Indicator 114

Apple CarPlay 307

Armrest 209

AT&T Hotspot 305

Audio Remote Controls 248

Audio System 242
- Adjusting the Sound 264
- Android Auto™ 313
- App Shortcut Function 254
- Audio Remote Controls 248
- Audio System Function 245
- Audio/Information Screen 253
- Basic Operation 245
- *Bluetooth*® Audio 293
- Clock Setup 261
- Display Setup 265
- Error Messages 362
- FLAC/PCM/WAVE 290
- FM Radio 272
- General Information 364
- How to Update 266
- How to Update Wirelessly 270
- How to Update with a USB Device 271
- iPod 287
- Limitations for Manual Operation 260, 346
- MP3/WMA/AAC 290
- Reactivating 243
- Recommended Devices 365
- Security Code 243
- Selecting an Audio Source 259
- Start Up 244
- Status Area 259
- System Updates 266
- System Updates Settings 267
- Theft Protection 243
- USB Flash Drives 290, 365

USB Ports ... 247
Wallpaper Setup ... 262
Audio/Information Screen ... 253
Authorized Manuals ... 673
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ... 163
Auto High-Beam ... 186
Indicator ... 117
Automatic Brake Hold ... 519
Indicator ... 112, 520
Automatic Brake Hold System
Indicator ... 112, 519
Automatic Intermittent Wipers ... 190
Average Fuel Economy ... 135
Average Speed ... 138

B

Battery ... 598
12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator ... 112
Charging ... 540
High Voltage ... 558
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead ... 635
Maintenance (checking the 12-Volt battery) ... 598
Maintenance (Replacing) ... 600
Safety Checklist ... 540
Belts (Seat) ... 53
Beverage Holders ... 214
Blind Spot Information System ... 427
Bluetooth® Audio ... 293
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® ... 343
Booster Seats (For Children) ... 101
Brake System ... 514
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ... 523
Automatic Brake Hold ... 519
Brake Assist System ... 524
Fluid ... 578
Foot Brake ... 518
Indicator (Amber) ... 110, 642
Indicator (Red) ... 108, 109, 641, 642
Parking Brake ... 514
Brightness ... 142
Built-in Key ... 147
Bulb Replacement ... 580
Brake Lights, Taillights, Rear Side Marker Lights, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs ... 581
Front Side Marker Lights ... 580
Front Turn Signal, Parking/Daytime Running Lights ... 580
Headlights ... 580
High-Mount Brake Light ... 583
Rear License Plate Light ... 583
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights ... 580
Taillights and Back-Up Lights ... 583
Bulb Specifications ... 666

C

Cargo (Maximum Load Limit) ... 391
Carrying Cargo ... 389, 391
Certification Label ... 667
Changing Bulbs ... 580
Characteristics of Fuel Cell Vehicles ... 13
Charge Timer Setting ... 553
CHARGE/DECEL Gauge ... 125
Charging ... 540
AC Charger ... 542
Charge Indicator (Vehicle Side) ... 547
High Voltage Battery ... 558
Timer ... 553
Unable to Disengage the Charging/Power Supply Connector ... 661
Charging System Indicator ... 112, 640
Child Safety ... 85
Childproof Door Locks ... 162
Child Seat ... 85
Booster Seats ... 101
Child Seat for Infants ... 87
Child Seat for Small Children ... 88
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt ... 94
Larger Children ... 100
Rear-facing Child Seat ... 87
Selecting a Child Seat ... 89
Childproof Door Locks ... 162
Cleaning the Exterior ... 606
Cleaning the Interior ... 603

Climate Control System 232
Changing the Mode..... 232
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 234
Dust and Pollen Filter 602
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode..... 233
Sensors 239
Synchronization Mode 235
Turning the Climate Control System On and Off with the Remote..... 236
Using Automatic Climate Control..... 232
CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™) 436
Coat Hook 216
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 436
Console Compartment..... 213
Controls 145
Coolant..... 575
Adding to the Reserve Tank 575
Overheating..... 637
Creeping..... 401
Cross Traffic Monitor 531
Cup Holders..... 214
Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist..... 128
Customer Service Information 674
Customize Display..... 130
Customized Features 326

D

Daytime Running Lights..... 185
Dead 12-Volt Battery..... 635
Deceleration Paddle Selector..... 409
Defaulting All the Settings 342
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 234
Detachable Anchor..... 60
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 668
Dimming
Headlights 182
Rearview Mirror 197
Directional Signals (Turn Signal) 181
Display Setup 265
Door Mirrors 198
Doors 147
Auto Door Locking 163
Auto Door Unlocking..... 163
Keys 147
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside..... 159
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside..... 150
DOT Tire Quality Grading 592
Drive Mode Switch 414
Driver Information Interface
Switching the Display 132
Driver Information Interface (Left Side Area) 129
Driver Information Interface (Right Side Area)..... 132
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support..... 201
Driving 387
Braking 514
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines..... 395
Transmission 401
Turn on the Power 397
Driving Position Memory System 193
Dust and Pollen Filter..... 602

E

Eco Assist® System 26
ECON Mode Indicator 118
Elapsed Time..... 138
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
Indicator..... 115, 643
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)..... 419
Emergency 657
Emergency Power System Off 634
Emergency Power System On..... 633
Emergency Tailgate Opener..... 662
Engine
Starting..... 397
Switch Buzzer..... 179
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 643
EV Indicator 111
Exterior Care (Cleaning)..... 606
Exterior Mirrors 198

F

FC System in Extreme Cold-weather Conditions 431
Features 241
Filters
  Dust and Pollen 602
Flat Tire 615
Floor Mats 604
Fluids
  Brake 578
  Coolant 575
  Transmission 577
  Windshield Washer 579
FM Radio 272
Folding Down the Rear Seats 204
Foot Brake 518
Front Airbags (SRS) 67
Front Seat Heaters 225
Front Seats 199
  Adjusting 199
Front Sensor Camera 510
Fuel 38, 537
  Average Fuel Economy 135
  Economy 559
  Gauge 125
  How to Handle Leaked Hydrogen Gas 638
  Hydrogen Leak Indicator 114
  Instant Fuel Economy 135
  Low Fuel Indicator 113
  Range 38, 135
  Refueling 38, 537
  Requirement 537
Fuel Cell Vehicle Precautions 18
Fuel Economy 559
Fuel Fill Door 38, 538
Fuses 648
  Inspecting and Changing 653
  Locations 648, 650, 651

G

Gauge Display Settings 143
Gauges 124
Glass (care) 603, 608
Glove Box 212

H

Handling of the Jack 629
Handling the Unexpected 613
HandsFreeLink® (HFL) 343
  Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Recent calls 354
  Automatic Transferring 355
  Favorite Contacts 356
  HFL Buttons 343
  In Case of Emergency 663
  Limitations for Manual Operation 346
  Making a Call 358
  Options During a Call 361
  Phone Settings Screen 349
  Phone Setup 350
  Receiving a Call 360
  Ringtone 355
Hazard Warning Button 8
HD Radio™ 274, 383
Head Restraints 207
Headlights 182
  Aiming 580
  Auto High-Beam 186
  Dimming 182
  Operating 182
Heated Steering Wheel 224
Heaters (Front Seat) 225
HFL (HandsFreeLink®) 343
HFL Menus 347
HFL Status Display 345
High Beam Indicator 117
High Voltage Battery 558
  Charging 540
High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge 126
High Voltage System Coolant 575
Hill Descent Control System 417
Hill Descent Control System Indicator 118, 418
Hill Start Assist System 399
Honda App License Agreement 366
Honda Sensing® 39, 433
HondaLink® 296

I

Identification Numbers
Motor, and Transmission 667
Vehicle Identification 667
If Hydrogen Gas is Leaking 638
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 635
If You Cannot Disengage the Charging/ Power Supply Connector 661
If You Cannot Open the Charge Lid 660
Immobilizer System 173
Indicator 117
In Case of Emergency or Vehicle Trouble 663
Indicators 106
12-Volt Battery Charging System 112, 640
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (Amber) 119
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (White/Green) .. 120, 465
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval 120
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 114
Auto High-Beam 117
AUTO Mode 16, 118
Automatic Brake Hold 112, 520
Automatic Brake Hold System 112, 519
CHARGE Mode 16, 118
Cruise Mode (White/Green) 120
Deceleration Paddle Selector 113
ECON Mode 118, 414
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 115, 643
EV 16, 111
EV Mode 118
High Beam 117
Hill Descent Control System (White/Green) 118
Hydrogen Leak 114, 638
Immobilizer System 117
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber) 120
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/Green) 121
Lights On 117
Low Fuel 113
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS ... 116, 422, 425, 644
NORMAL Mode 118, 414
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 110, 642
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 108, 109, 641, 642
POWER SYSTEM 111
READY 111, 398
Safety Support (Amber) 121
Safety Support (Green/Gray) 123
SAVE Mode 17, 118
Seat Belt Reminder 55, 113
Security System Alarm 117
Shift Position 112
SNOW Mode 118, 414
SPORT Mode 118, 414
Supplemental Restraint System 81, 114
System Message 119
Transmission System 112, 645
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 117
Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF 116, 420
Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System 115, 419
Information 665
Instant Fuel Economy 135
Instrument Panel 105
Interior Lights 210
Interior Rearview Mirror 197
iPod 287

J

Jump Starting 635

K

Key Number Tag 148
Keyless Access System 150
Keys 147
Master Keys 147
Number Tag 148
Rear Door Won't Open 162
Remote Transmitter 155
Types and Functions 147
Knee Airbags 72

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 485
LATCH (Child Seats) 90
Lights 182, 580
  Auto High-Beam 186
  Bulb Replacement 580
  Daytime Running Lights 185
  High Beam Indicator 117
  Interior 210
  Light Switches 182
  Lights On Indicator 117
  Parking Lights 182
  Turn Signals 181
Load Limits 391
Locking/Unlocking 147
  Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 163
  Childproof Door Locks 162
  From Inside 159
  From Outside 150
  Keys 147
  Using a Key 156
Low 12-Volt Battery Charge 640
Low Battery Charge 640
Low Fuel Indicator 113
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 149
Low Speed Braking Control 450
Lower Anchors 90
Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) 391
Lumbar Support 201
Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch 201

M

Maintenance 561
  12-Volt Battery 598
  Brake Fluid 578
  Cleaning 603
  Coolant 575
  Maintenance Minder™ 565
  Precautions 562
  Remote Transmitter 600
  Replacing Light Bulbs 580
  Safety 563
  Service Items 569
  Tires 588
  Transmission Fluid 577
  Under the Hood 572
Map Lights 211
Maximum Charge Setting 555
Maximum Load Limit 391
Meters, Gauges 124
Mirrors 197
  Adjusting 197
  Door 198
  Exterior 198
  Interior Rearview 197
Modifications (and Accessories) 610
Motor 667
MP3/WMA/AAC 290
Multi-View Rear Camera 535

N

Navigation 138
NORMAL Mode Indicator 118
Numbers (Identification) 667

O

Odometer 127
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines 395
Open Source Licenses 378, 675
Opening/Closing
  Hood 573
  Power Windows 176
  Tailgate 164
Outside Temperature Display 127
Overheating 637

P

Paddle Selectors 409
Panic Mode 175
Parking 525
Parking Brake 514
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) 110, 642
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) 108, 109, 641, 642
Parking Lights 182
Parking Sensor System 526
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 82
Passing Indicators 182

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 293
POWER Button 179
POWER Gauge 125
Power Supply Connector 227
Power System
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 635
Won't Start 630
POWER SYSTEM Indicator 111
Power System Won't Start 630
Power Tailgate 165
Power Windows 176
Precautions While Driving
Rain 400
Pregnant Women 62
Puncture (Tire) 615

R

Radio (FM) 272
Radio (SiriusXM®) 276
Radio Data System (RDS) 275
Range 135
RDS (Radio Data System) 275
READY Indicator 111
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button 192
Rear Seats (Folding Down) 204
Rearview Mirror 197
Refueling 38, 537
Fuel 38, 537
Fuel Gauge 125
Low Fuel Indicator 113
Regulations 425, 552, 592, 668
Remote Transmitter 155
Replacement
Battery 600
Bulbs 580
Front Wiper Blade 585
Fuses 648, 650, 651
Rear Wiper Blade Rubber 586
Tires 595
Reporting Safety Defects 669
Resetting a Trip Meter 135
Road Departure Mitigation 456
On and Off 459

S

Safe Driving 47
Safety Check 52
Safety Labels 102
Safety Message 4
Safety Support 140
Seat Belts 53
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 59
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 57
Checking 63
Detachable Anchor 60
Fastening 58
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 94
Pregnant Women 62
Reminder 55
Warning Indicator 55, 113
Seat Heaters 225
Seats 199
Adjusting 199
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support 201
Front Seat Heaters 225
Front Seats 199
Rear Seats 203
Security System 173
Immobilizer System Indicator 117
Security System Alarm Indicator 117
Selecting a Child Seat 89
Setting the Clock 146
Shift Button 402
Operation 404
Shift Position Indicator 112
Shifting (Transmission) 402
Shoulder Anchor 59
Side Airbags 76
Side Curtain Airbags 79
SiriusXM® Radio 276
Smart Shortcuts 300
SNOW Mode 118, 414
Snow Tires 597
Specifications 666
Specified Fuel 38, 537, 666
Speed/Distance Units 142
Speedometer 124
SPORT Mode 118, 414
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 67

Steering Wheel 196
Adjusting 196
Stopping 525
Summer Tires 597
Sunglasses Holder 217
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 67
Switches
(Around the Steering Wheel) 8, 9, 179
System Message Indicator 119
System Updates 266

T

Tailgate 164
Unable to Open 662
Temperature
Outside Temperature Display 127
Temperature Sensor 127, 239
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 615
Time (Setting) 146
Timer 553
Tire Pressure Monitoring System
(TPMS) 422
Indicator 116, 644
Tires 588
Air Pressure 589, 666
Checking and Maintaining 588
Inspection 588
Labeling 590
Puncture (Flat Tire) 615
Regulations 592
Rotation 596
Summer 597
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 615
Tire Chains 597
Wear Indicators 594
Winter 597
Tools 614
Towing a Trailer 394
Towing Your Vehicle 394
Behind a Motorhome 394
Emergency 657
TPMS
(Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 422
Indicator 116, 644
Traffic Jam Assist 495
Traffic Sign Recognition System 128, 504
Transmission 402
Creeping 401
Fluid 577
Number 667
Operating the Shift Button 404
Shift Position Indicator 112, 404
Trip Meter 135
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) 615
Troubleshooting 613
Blown Fuse 648, 650, 651
Brake Pedal Vibrates 43
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 43
Charge Lid Won't Open 660
Charging/Power Supply Connector Won't
Disengage 661
Emergency Towing 657
If Hydrogen Gas is Leaking 638
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 635
In Case of Emergency or Vehicle
Trouble 663
Noise When Braking 45
Overheating 637
Power System Won't Start 630
Puncture/Flat Tire 615
Rear Door Won't Open 43, 162
Warning Indicators 106
Turn Signals 181
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 117
Turning on the Power
Does Not Activate 630
If the 12-Volt Battery Is Dead 635
Turning the Climate Control System
On and Off with the Remote 236

U

Unlocking the Doors 150
Unlocking the Front Doors from
the Inside 31, 159
USB Flash Drives 242, 290, 365
USB Ports 247
Using the Keyless Access System 150

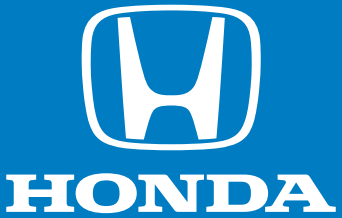
V

Vanity Mirrors 11

Vehicle Charging and Schedule Settings 319
Vehicle Identification Number 667
Vehicle Monitoring System 3
Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) 419
Off Button 420
OFF Indicator 116, 420
System Indicator 115, 419
Voice Control Operation 250
Audio Commands 251
General Commands 251
List Commands 252
Navigation Commands 252
Phone Commands 251
Standard Commands 252
Voice Portal Screen 251
Voice Recognition 250
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist™) 419

W

Wallpaper 262
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 640
Warning Labels 102
Warnings 144
Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately) 670
Watts 666
Wear Indicators (Tire) 594
Wi-Fi Connection 304
Window Washers 189
Adding/Refilling Fluid 579
Switch 189
Windows (Opening and Closing) 176
Windshield 189
Cleaning 603, 608
Defrosting/Defogging 234
Washer Fluid 579
Wiper Blades 584
Wipers and Washers 189
Winter Tires 597
Snow Tires 597
Tire Chains 597
Wipers and Washers 189
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 190
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 584
Front 189
Rear 191
Wireless Charger 220
WMA 290
Worn Tires 588



MYGARAGE.HONDA.COM (U.S.A.)
HONDA.CA (CANADA)

31T95610
OM-30013
00X31-T95-6101

2026 Honda CR-V e: FCEV Owner's Manual
© 2026 Honda Motor Co., Ltd. – All Rights Reserved

Printed in the U.S.A.